Adobe Acrobat DC Third Edition



CLASSROOM IN A BOOK[®] The official training workbook from Adobe Brie Gyncild & Lisa Fridsma

Adobe

Adobe Acrobat DC Third Edition

CLASSROOM IN A BOOK[®] The official training workbook from Adobe

Brie Gyncild & Lisa Fridsma

Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book®, Third Edition

© 2019 Adobe. All rights reserved.

Adobe Press is an imprint of Pearson Education, Inc. For the latest on Adobe Press books, go to www.adobepress.com. To report errors, please send a note to errata@peachpit.com. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

If this guide is distributed with software that includes an end user license agreement, this guide, as well as the software described in it, is furnished under license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license. Except as permitted by any such license, no part of this guide may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Please note that the content in this guide is protected under copyright law even if it is not distributed with software that includes an end user license agreement.

The content of this guide is furnished for informational use only, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Systems Incorporated assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in the informational content contained in this guide.

All files provided with this book are copyrighted by Adobe and/or Pearson and are allowed for use only with the tutorials in this book. Please remember that existing artwork or images that you may want to include in your project may be protected under copyright law. The unauthorized incorporation of such material into your new work could be a violation of the rights of the copyright owner. Please be sure to obtain any permission required from the copyright owner.

Any references to company names in sample files are for demonstration purposes only and are not intended to refer to any actual organization.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, Classroom in a Book, Acrobat, Reader, LiveCycle, the Adobe PDF logo, Adobe Sign, EchoSign, PDF Portfolio, InDesign, Photoshop, and Illustrator, are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, macOS, iPhone, iPad, iPod, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Microsoft, Windows, Excel, PowerPoint, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe, 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, California 95110-2704, USA

Notice to U.S. Government End Users. The Software and Documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. §2.101, consisting of "Commercial Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation are being licensed to U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. Unpublished-rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States. Adobe Systems Incorporated, 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704, USA. For U.S. Government End Users, Adobe agrees to comply with all applicable equal opportunity laws including, if appropriate, the provisions of Executive Order 11246, as amended, Section 402 of the Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Assistance Act of 1974 (38 USC 4212), and Section 503 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and the regulations at 41 CFR Parts 60-1 through 60-60, 60-250, and 60-741. The affirmative action clause and regulations contained in the preceding sentence shall be incorporated by reference.

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-549564-3 ISBN-10: 0-13-549564-4

1 1 9

WHERE ARE THE LESSON FILES?

Purchase of this Classroom in a Book in any format gives you access to the lesson files you'll need to complete the exercises in the book. All lesson files are copyrighted; you may use them only to complete the exercises in this book

You'll find the files you need on your **Account** page at peachpit.com on the **Registered Products** tab.

- 1 Go to www.peachpit.com/register.
- 2 Sign in or create a new account.
- **3** Enter the ISBN: **9780135495643**.



- 4 Answer the questions as proof of purchase.
- 5 The lesson files can be accessed through the Registered Products tab on your Account page.
- 6 Click the Access Bonus Content link below the title of your product to proceed to the download page. Click the lesson file links to download them to your computer.



CONTENTS

GETTING STARTED

ED	1
About Classroom in a Book	1
Acrobat Pro and Acrobat Standard	2
Prerequisites	2
Installing Adobe Acrobat	2
Options for purchasing Acrobat DC	3
Starting Adobe Acrobat	3
Online content	3
Additional resources	5
Adobe Authorized Training Centers	5
Going mobile	6

8

1 INTRODUCING ADOBE ACROBAT DC



About PDF	10
About Adobe Acrobat	10
About Acrobat Reader	11
About Document Cloud	12
About the Acrobat mobile apps	12
Using PDF on the web	13
Adding Acrobat Reader installers	13
About the Home view	14
Opening a PDF file	15
Working with toolbars	17
Tools in the Tools pane	19
Working with tools	20
Navigating PDF documents	22
Viewing PDF presentations in Full Screen mode	29

	Viewing PDF files in Read mode
	Customizing the Acrobat toolbar
	Setting Acrobat preferences for web browsing
	Customizing the brightness of the user interface
	Getting help
	Review questions and answers
2 CREATING	ADOBE PDF FILES 38
	About creating Adobe PDF files40
GREEN!	Using the Create PDF tool40
C U julija o	Dragging and dropping files44
	Saving PDF files to cloud accounts
	Converting different types of files45
	Inserting a blank page50
	Using PDFMaker51
	Using the Print command to create Adobe PDF files
	Reducing file size54
	Adobe PDF presets54
	Optimizing PDF files (Acrobat Pro only)55
	Creating files from the clipboard56
	Scanning a paper document
	Making scanned text editable and searchable58
	Scan using mobile devices58
	Converting web pages to Adobe PDF60
	Review questions and answers65
3 READING A	ND WORKING WITH PDF FILES 66
	About the onscreen display68
PALL	Reading PDF documents68
MERIDIEN	Searching PDE documents 74



About flexibility, accessibility, and structure
Working with accessible documents83
Making files flexible and accessible (Acrobat Pro only) $\ldots88$
About tags
Using Acrobat accessibility features (Standard and Pro) $\ldots .92$
Sharing PDF files96
Review questions and answers97

98

120

142

4 ENHANCING PDF DOCUMENTS



Examining the work file	
Moving pages with page thumbnails	
Manipulating pages	104
Renumbering pages	
Applying Bates numbering (Acrobat Pro only)	
Managing links	
Working with bookmarks	113
Naming bookmarks automatically	114
Setting document properties and metadata	
Adding multimedia files	
Setting up presentations	
Review questions and answers	

5 EDITING CONTENT IN PDF FILES



Editing text122
Redacting text (Acrobat Pro only)128
Working with images in a PDF file129
Copying text and images from a PDF file132
Exporting PDF content to a PowerPoint presentation135
Saving PDF files as Word documents137
Extracting PDF tables as Excel spreadsheets139
Review questions and answers141

6 USING ACROBAT ON MOBILE DEVICES

brate the harvest!	About the Acrobat mobile apps	144
And a fair of the set	Getting Started	145
Anger Heartig Augent and Anneel Entertaine and Anneel Entertaine and for another and for another and for another and for another	Using the Acrobat Reader app	145

		Using Document Cloud in a web browser	150
		Using the Fill & Sign app	153
		Using the Adobe Scan app	154
		Review questions and answers	157
7	USING ACF	ROBAT WITH MICROSOFT OFFICE FILES	158
		Getting started	160
	for Local	About Acrobat PDFMaker	160
	Presente Properti	Converting Microsoft Word files to Adobe PDF (Windows)	161
	Country April Art	Creating Adobe PDF files from Word	
		mail-merge templates	166
		Converting Word documents to PDF (macOS)	167
		Converting Excel documents (Windows)	168
		Converting Excel spreadsheets (macOS)	
		Using the Spreadsheet Split view	
		Converting PowerPoint presentations (Windows)	
		Converting PowerPoint presentations (macOS)	
		Review questions and answers	

8 COMBINING FILES

About combining files	180
Selecting files to combine	180
Arranging pages	186
Merging the files	189
Creating a PDF Portfolio (Acrobat Pro)	191
Review questions and answers	193

9 ADDING SIGNATURES AND SECURITY

{custom}
Statement of Neek
Investment to Global Corp. Tor Project Management Services

Getting started19	6
Viewing documents in Protected Mode	
in Reader (Windows only)19	6
About security in Acrobat19	8
Viewing security settings19	8
Adding security to PDF files20	0
About digital signatures20	5
Sending a document for others to sign20	5

178

194

Using the Fill & Sign tool	209
Using digital IDs	217
Review questions and answers	219

10 USING ACROBAT IN A REVIEW CYCLE220About the review process222Getting started222Adding comments to a PDF document223Commenting in Acrobat Reader225Working with comments230Initiating a shared review234Summarizing comments234Using a network folderfor a shared review237Comparing versions of documents238

11 WORKING WITH FORMS IN ACROBAT



Getting started244
Converting PDF files to interactive PDF forms244
Types of form fields246
Adding form fields
Specifying an answer format249
Using image buttons254
Distributing forms
Collecting form data
Tracking forms
Options for distributing forms261
Working with form data262
Exploring on your own:
Calculating and validating numeric fields
Review questions and answers

242

USING ACTIONS (ACROBAT PRO)



About actions	270
Using predefined actions	270
Creating an action	274
Avoiding the Full Screen mode warning	282
Sharing actions	284
Review questions and answers	285

13 USING ACROBAT IN PROFESSIONAL PRINTING



OBAT IN PROFESSIONAL PRINTING	286
Creating PDF files for print and prepress	288
Guidelines for creating print-ready PDF files	289
Preflighting files (Acrobat Pro)	291
Working with transparency (Acrobat Pro)	294
Custom preflight profiles	294
PDF standards	295
What is rasterization?	297
About flattening options in the Flattener	
Preview dialog box	299
Setting up color management	300
Previewing your print job (Acrobat Pro)	
Advanced printing controls	
Review questions and answers	

INDEX	309
PRODUCTION NOTES	327

This page intentionally left blank

GETTING STARTED

Adobe[®] Acrobat[®] DC is an essential tool in today's electronic workflow. You can use Acrobat Standard or Acrobat Pro to convert virtually any document to Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF), preserving the exact look and content of the original, complete with fonts and graphics. You can edit text and images in PDF documents, initiate reviews, distribute and share documents, create interactive forms, and more.

About Classroom in a Book

Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book^{*}, Third Edition is part of the official training series for Adobe graphics and publishing software, developed with the support of Adobe product experts. The lessons are designed to let you learn at your own pace. If you're new to Adobe Acrobat, you'll learn the fundamental concepts and features you'll need to master the program. If you've been using Acrobat for a while, you'll find that Classroom in a Book teaches many advanced features, including tips and techniques for using the newest features.

Although each lesson provides step-by-step instructions for working with specific projects, there's room for exploration and experimentation. You can follow the book from start to finish, or complete only the lessons that match your interests and needs. Each lesson concludes with a review section summarizing what you've covered.

Acrobat Pro and Acrobat Standard

This book covers features included in Acrobat Pro and Acrobat Standard. We've noted where a tool or feature described in this book is available only in Acrobat Pro. Features available only in Acrobat Pro include:

- · Preflighting documents and other print production tasks
- Creating PDF Portfolios
- Checking PDF documents for accessibility
- Applying Bates numbering and redaction
- Comparing versions of a document
- Using and creating actions

Prerequisites

Before beginning to use *Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book, Third Edition*, you should have a working knowledge of your computer and its operating system. Make sure you know how to use the mouse, standard menus and commands, and also how to open, save, and close files. If you need to review these techniques, see the printed or online documentation included with your system.

Installing Adobe Acrobat

Before beginning to use *Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book, Third Edition,* make sure that your system is set up correctly and that you've installed the required software and hardware. You must purchase Adobe Acrobat DC software separately. For system requirements, see the Adobe website at www.adobe.com/products/ acrobat/main.html.

You must install the application onto your hard drive. Follow the onscreen installation instructions.

Some lessons require other Acrobat apps, including Adobe Acrobat Reader (for desktop computers), the Adobe Acrobat Reader app, Adobe Fill & Sign, and Adobe Scan. You can download and install them all now, or install them when you need them.

Options for purchasing Acrobat DC

Both Acrobat DC Standard and Acrobat DC Pro are available as standalone software and by subscription alone or through an Adobe Creative Cloud subscription. Which option you choose depends on your individual and organizational needs. However, just as there are feature differences between Acrobat Standard and Acrobat Pro, there are more features available when you have an Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, both of which include access to Adobe Document Cloud services. Where Document Cloud services are required for a feature, such as Adobe Sign, we've noted it in the lessons.

You can learn more and compare your options for purchasing Acrobat DC at acrobat.adobe.com/us/en/pricing/pricing-compare-plans.html.

Starting Adobe Acrobat

You start Acrobat just as you would any other software application.

- Windows: Choose Start > Programs or All Programs > Adobe Acrobat DC.
- **macOS:** Open the Adobe Acrobat DC folder, and double-click the program icon.

Online content

Your purchase of this Classroom in a Book includes online materials provided by way of your Account page on peachpit.com.

Lesson files

To work through the projects in this book, you will need to download the lesson files from peachpit.com. You can download the files for individual lessons or it may be possible to download them all in a single file.

Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition

If you purchased an eBook from peachpit.com or adobepress.com, your Web Edition will automatically appear under the Digital Purchases tab on your Account page. Click the Launch link to access the product. Continue reading to learn how to register your product to get access to the lesson files.

If you purchased an eBook from a different vendor or you bought a print book, you must register your purchase on peachpit.com in order to access the online content:

- 1 Go to www.peachpit.com/register.
- 2 Sign in or create a new account.
- 3 Enter the ISBN: 9780135495643
- **4** Answer the questions as proof of purchase.

The Web Edition will appear under the Digital Purchases tab on your Account page.

5 Click the Launch link to access the product.

Purchase of this Classroom in a Book in any form gives you access to the lesson files you'll need to complete the exercises in this book. All lesson files are copyrighted; you may use them only to complete the exercises in this book.

You can access the lesson files through the Registered Products tab on your Account page. Click the Access Bonus Content link below the title of your product to proceed to the download page. Click the lesson file links to download them to your computer, and then unzip them.

The files are compressed into zip archives to speed download time and to protect the contents from damage during transfer. You must uncompress (or "unzip") the files to restore them to their original size and format before you use them with the book. On a modern operating system, simply double-click a zip archive to open it.

When you begin each lesson, you will navigate to the folder with that lesson number, where you will find all of the project files you need to complete the lesson.

• Note: As you complete each lesson, you will preserve the start files. In case you overwrite them, you can restore the original files by downloading the corresponding lesson files from your Account page at peachpit.com.

Additional resources

Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book, Third Edition is not meant to replace documentation provided with the program or to be a comprehensive reference for every feature. Only the commands and options used in the lessons are explained in this book. For comprehensive information about program features and tutorials, refer to these resources:

- Adobe Acrobat Learn and Support: helpx.adobe.com/acrobat.html has comprehensive content you can search or browse, provided by Adobe. This includes hands-on tutorials, a link to Help, answers to common questions, troubleshooting information, and more.
- Acrobat DC User Guide: helpx.adobe.com/acrobat/topics.html is a reference for application features, commands, and tools (press F1 or choose Help > Online Support). You can also download Help as a PDF document optimized for printing at helpx.adobe.com/pdf/acrobat_reference.pdf.
- Acrobat Forums: forums.adobe.com/community/acrobat lets you tap into peer-to-peer discussions and questions and answers on Acrobat and other Adobe products.
- Adobe Creative Cloud Learn: https://helpx.adobe.com/support/creativecloud.html provides inspiration, key techniques, cross-product workflows, and updates on new features.
- **Resources for educators:** edex.adobe.com offers a treasure trove of information for instructors who teach classes on Adobe software. Find solutions for education at all levels, including free curricula that use an integrated approach to teaching Adobe software and can be used to prepare for the Adobe Certified Associate exams.

Also check out these useful links:

- Adobe Add-ons: creative.adobe.com/addons is a central resource for finding tools, services, extensions, code samples, and more to supplement and extend your Adobe products.
- Adobe Acrobat DC product home page: www.adobe.com/products/acrobat has more information about the product.

Adobe Authorized Training Centers

Adobe Authorized Training Centers offer instructor-led courses and training on Adobe products. A directory of AATCs is available at https://training.adobe. com/training/partner-finder.html.

Going mobile

The free Adobe Acrobat DC mobile app makes it easy to view and work with PDF files from anywhere on your Android and iOS devices (including iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch). With the free app, you can view PDF files; add comments using the highlight, strikethrough, underline, and freehand drawing tools; view password-protected and encrypted PDF files; and fill out, save, and send fillable PDF forms. You can even sign forms electronically.

Done	MeridienFeedback PDF					Ø	<u>ر</u> ه ا	Q	(†) ···
		Ab	~	× •	-	0 20	>		
1. WU 2. DU 3. HI	A GRAND	nterest t ansporta ansorta acce initia and future	C O Thank y Wéd low back new back new b	N F E I	RENCI ending our bow we did that apply)	E FEI conference l and hope	E D B A C e this year. e to see you 5=Fantastic)	κ	
	Environmentally Responsible	Accessib	ole Transp	ortation	Din	ing	Acco	mmodation	s
5	c 8								
q	2 3 W e	4 r	5 t	6 y	7 U	° i	9 O	° p	\propto
a	s d	1	f	g	ĥ	j	k		return
Ŷ	z x	+ C	v	b	n	m	1	?	ŵ
.?123	<u>ب</u>						.?1	23	

With an Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, the app becomes more powerful. You can use it to create, export, and organize pages in a PDF file. If you're working on an iPad, you can also edit pages in a PDF document.

You can download the app free from the iTunes App Store (for iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch) or from Google play (for Android).

For more information about the Acrobat DC mobile app, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices," or visit acrobat.adobe.com/us/en/products/mobile-app.html.

<	MeridienFeedback PDF		Ø		÷,	Q	[[†]]	
	MERI DIEN	CONFER Thank you for atter We'd love to hear he back next year!	ENCE Fl ading our confere ow we did and h	EED nce this ope to su	BAC year. ee you	ĸ		
	 What were your areas of into Improving Public Tran Road Sharing Planning Future Live / Work Are Other: Green space 2. Do you think you will attend Yes No 3. How would you rate your experimentally Responsible Accession and the second se	rest this year? <i>(check all th</i> sportation a Projects e initiatives future events? berience while attending? <i>(</i> cessible Transportation	at apply) (1= Terrible 3= Oka Dining Options	y 5=Fa	ntastic) Accor	oo haa	uns	
	5. Please provide your cell phor	ie number if you'd like to re	ceive future annou	incen	₽ ₀ 0 & F / E	Commer ill & Sig dit PDF Organize	n n : Pages	

INTRODUCING ADOBE ACROBAT DC

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Get acquainted with the Portable Document Format (PDF), Acrobat DC, and Acrobat Reader DC.
- Use the Home view to access your files and tools.
- Select tools in the toolbars.
- Use tools in the Tools pane.
- Customize toolbars.
- Navigate a PDF document using the toolbars, menu commands, page thumbnails, and bookmarks.
- Change the view of a document in the document pane.
- View a PDF document in Read mode.
- Learn to use Adobe Acrobat DC Help.



This lesson will take approximately an hour to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



The Acrobat DC workspace puts the tools you need at your fingertips without cluttering up the screen. You can customize the toolbars for quicker access to tools you use frequently.

About PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a file format that preserves all of the fonts, formatting, colors, and graphics of any source document, regardless of the application and platform used to create the original document. PDF files are compact and secure. Anyone using the free Acrobat Reader DC can view, navigate, comment on, and print a PDF file. Acrobat Reader users can also complete and return PDF forms and electronically sign PDF documents.

- PDF preserves the exact layout, fonts, and text formatting of electronic documents, regardless of the computer system or platform used to view these documents.
- You can read PDF documents using Acrobat Reader, Acrobat Standard, Acrobat Pro, or Adobe Document Cloud.
- PDF documents can contain multiple languages, such as Japanese and English, on the same page.
- PDF documents print predictably, with proper margins and page breaks.
- You can secure PDF files to prevent unauthorized changes or printing or to limit access to confidential documents.
- You can change the view magnification of a PDF page in Acrobat or Acrobat Reader, which is especially useful for zooming in on graphics or diagrams containing intricate details.
- You can share your PDF files using network and web servers, email, CDs, DVDs, other removable media, and Document Cloud.

About Adobe Acrobat

Adobe Acrobat lets you create, manage, edit, assemble, and search PDF documents. Additionally, you can create forms, initiate review processes, apply legal features, and prepare PDF documents for professional printing.

Almost any document—a text file, a file created in a page-layout or graphics application, a scanned document, a web page, or a digital photo—can be converted to Adobe PDF using Acrobat software or third-party authoring applications. Your workflow and document type determine the best way to create a PDF.

About Acrobat Reader

Acrobat Reader, available free online, is the global standard for viewing PDF files. It is the only PDF viewer that can open and interact with all PDF documents. Acrobat Reader makes it possible to view, search, digitally sign, verify, print, and collaborate on PDF files without having Acrobat installed.



Acrobat Reader can natively display rich media content, including video and audio files. You can also view PDF Portfolios in Acrobat Reader.

In Windows, Acrobat Reader opens PDF files in Protected Mode (known as "sandboxing" to IT professionals). In Protected Mode, Reader confines any processes to the application itself, so that potentially malicious PDF files do not have access to your computer and its system files. To verify that Acrobat Reader is in Protected Mode, choose File > Properties, select the Advanced tab, and view the Protected Mode status.

Note: Adobe strongly recommends that you use Acrobat Reader for Windows in Protected Mode. However, if you need to disable it, choose Edit > Preferences. Then, select General from the list of categories, and deselect **Enable Protected** Mode At Startup in the **Application Startup** panel. You'll need to restart Acrobat Reader for the change to take effect.

About Document Cloud

A subscription to Document Cloud, included in a Creative Cloud subscription, provides free online storage for PDF files so that you can access them from any device, wherever you are. When you access Document Cloud in a browser, you also have access to most of the functionality of the desktop version of Acrobat, except commenting tools. To access your files and Acrobat features on Document Cloud, go to https://documentcloud.adobe.com, and sign in if prompted.

Learn more about working within Document Cloud in Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices."

About the Acrobat mobile apps

The Adobe Acrobat Reader DC mobile app lets you work with PDF files on tablets and phones, using many of the features available in the desktop version of Acrobat. Adobe Scan, Adobe Sign, and Adobe Fill & Sign apps provide convenient access to specific features on mobile devices. Most lessons in this book focus on the features in the desktop version of Acrobat, but you can learn more about the mobile apps in Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices."



Adding Acrobat Reader installers

Acrobat Reader is available free of charge, making it easier for users to view your PDF documents. You can point users to the Acrobat Reader installers on the Adobe website at get.adobe.com/Reader. If you're distributing documents on a CD or DVD, you can include a copy of the Acrobat Reader installers on the disc.

If you're including the Acrobat Reader installers on a disc, you should include a ReadMe text file at the top level of the CD or DVD that describes how to install Acrobat Reader and provides any last-minute information.

You may make and distribute unlimited copies of Acrobat Reader, including copies for commercial distribution. For complete information on distributing and giving your users access to Acrobat Reader DC and the Acrobat Reader mobile app, visit the Adobe website at www.adobe.com/products/reader/distribution.html.

A special logo is available from Adobe for use when distributing Acrobat Reader.

Using PDF on the web

The web makes it possible to deliver electronic documents to a wide and varied audience. Because web browsers can be configured to run other applications inside the browser window, you can post PDF files as part of a website. Visitors to your site can download PDF files or view them inside the browser window using Acrobat Reader.

When including a PDF file as part of your web page, consider directing users to the Adobe website so that the first time they encounter a PDF, they can download Acrobat Reader, free of charge, if necessary.

PDFs can be viewed one page at a time and printed from the web. With page-ata-time downloading, the web server sends only the requested page, decreasing downloading time. In addition, you can easily print selected pages or all pages from the document. PDF is a suitable format for publishing long electronic documents on the web, and PDF documents print predictably, with proper margins and page breaks.

You can also download and convert web pages to PDF, making it easy to save, distribute, and print them. (For more information, see Lesson 2, "Creating Adobe PDF Files.")

About the Home view

The Acrobat Home view provides links to tutorials and common tasks, such as exporting a PDF file to Microsoft Word format. By default, the Home view lists files you've recently opened, but you can choose to see files you've scanned, or navigate to PDF files on your local hard drive, Document Cloud, or your account on a cloud service such as Dropbox or Google Drive.

When you select a file in the recent files list, the Home view displays tools for quick access. Selecting a tool opens the selected document with the selected tool active.

Adobe Acrobat Pro DC					-		×
Home Tools			Q Search		P (?)		
Recent	Recent		E 11				
Scans		NAME	OPENED	MERI	Constanting and the second sec		
FILES		MeridienFeedback	Today, 3:02 PM				
My Computer Document Cloud		MeridienFeedback	Today, 3:02 PM		<u>.</u> <u>8</u> <u>.</u>		
Add an Account	Q	Aquo_Financial	Today, 2:23 PM	-		-	
SHARED For Viewing		Order_Start PDF	Dec 3	MeridienFeedb PDF • Opened Too C: \ Users \ Lisa Fri	ack day, 3:02 PM dsma \ Desktop \ L	essons \ I	Let.
For Review For Signature		Welcome PDF	Dec 3	년 Share			
	4	10515 E Bella Vista Dr - SPDS SIGN + 0 of 1 completed	Jun 18	🕞 Send For	Review		
		Statement of Work	Apr 4, 2017	Adobe Si	gn		
	de	Statement of Work SIGN • 0 of 1 completed	Apr 4, 2017	Export PC	DF		
		Tag_Wines SHARED + 0 of 1 viewed	Feb 22, 2017	d Organize	Pages		
		Tag_Wines	Feb 22, 2017	Commen	t		
	L.201	PDF		💪 Fill & Sig	n		

To access tutorials, click the Learn Adobe Acrobat icon (the question mark) at the top of the Home view.

Adobe Acrobat Pro DC		-		×
File Edit View Window Help		_		
Home Tools	Q Search	9	۸.	۲

Opening a PDF file

The default Acrobat DC work area is streamlined to ensure easy access to the tools you'll use most often as you work with PDF files.

1 Start Acrobat.

The Home view lists recently used files.

You want to open a file you haven't opened before, so it isn't included in the list of recent files.

2 Click My Computer in the Files area on the left.

Adobe Acrobat Pro DC			- 🗆 X
File Edit View Window Help Home Tools		Q. Search	💷 💿 🌲 🥌
Recent	My Computer		
RUES	Lesson11 C\Llsen\Lina\Desktop\Lesson4\Lesson4\Lesson11\		
My Computer Document Cloud	Assets C\User\Usa\Desktop\Lessons\Lesson11\As	sets),	
Add an Account	Browse		
SHARED For Viewing	~		
For Review			
For Signature			

- **3** Click Browse, navigate to the Lesson01/Assets folder on your hard drive, and select the Conference Guide.pdf file.
- 4 Click Open.

The menu bar and a toolbar are visible at the top of the work area. In Acrobat DC, each open document has its own tab, with its own work area and toolbars. You can access common commands in the menu bar.



▶ Tip: If you close the menu bar by choosing View > Show/Hide > Menu Bar, you won't be able to access any menu commands to reopen it. To reopen the menu bar, press F9 (Windows) or Command+Shift+M (macOS) on your keyboard. Acrobat can open in two different ways—as a standalone application or in a web browser. The associated work areas differ in small but important ways. This book assumes that you are using Acrobat as a standalone application.

5 Move your pointer down to the lower left corner of the document window to reveal the size of this page. (The document window is the part of the workspace that displays an open document.) The page size display disappears when you move the pointer away from the area.



Working with toolbars

The main Acrobat toolbar contains commonly used tools and commands for working with PDF files. You can show additional tools in the toolbar, add tools to the Quick Tools portion of the toolbar, and show recently used tools. The toolbar is designed to be simple and streamlined, giving you the control to add only the tools you use frequently.

Using the toolbar

By default, the top level of the toolbar includes the Home button, the Tools button, and tabs for each open document. In Document view, the lower level of the toolbar is specific to each document; by default, it includes buttons for saving, uploading, printing, or emailing a PDF file; the Find Text tool; a few navigation tools; page control tools; and some commenting tools. To use a tool, click it.



To see the name or description of a tool in the toolbar, hover the pointer over the tool.



Using page controls

The page control tools—the Selection (\clubsuit) and Hand (O) tools, page magnification, and page view options—help you navigate the page.

1 Click the Zoom In button () in the toolbar three times.



► Tip: You can undock the page controls from the main toolbar: Click the Move Page Controls Out Of Toolbar button. The separate toolbar appears when you hover the mouse over the bottom of the screen. To redock the page controls, click the Move Page Controls Into Toolbar button. Acrobat enlarges the view. Now only part of the document appears in the application window.

The default tool in Acrobat is the Selection tool (\clubsuit). The Hand tool lets you pan around the document.

- **2** Click the Hand tool (D) in the toolbar.
- **3** With the Hand tool selected, drag the document across the application window to see a different portion of the image.



4 Click the Zoom Out button (Θ) once to see more of the page.

The Zoom tools do not change the actual size of a document. They change only its magnification on your screen.

5 Click the arrow on the right side of the magnification text box, and choose Fit Visible from the pop-up menu to display the entire page.

k	9	Θ	\oplus	75% 💽 🛱 🕶 🐺
				10%
				25%
				50%
				Fit <u>W</u> idth
				Fit Visi <u>b</u> le

Tip: An arrow to the right of a tool indicates that there is a menu associated with that tool. Click the arrow to reveal that menu.

Tools in the Tools pane

By default, the Tools pane displays the most commonly used tools. To add or remove a tool from the pane, click Tools in the main toolbar to open the Tools Center view. Then choose Add Shortcut or Remove Shortcut from the menu beneath a tool. Acrobat uses the current Tools pane configuration in all PDF documents you open until you change the configuration again. (Some of the tools are available only in Acrobat Pro.)

Commonly used tools include:

- Create PDF: Create a PDF file from almost any file or scanned image.
- Combine Files: Create a PDF file from multiple PDF files or other documents.
- Edit PDF: Edit text, images, links, and other content, and crop pages.
- Export PDF: Export PDF files as Microsoft Office documents, images, HTML web pages, and other formats.
- Organize Pages: Rotate, delete, insert, replace, split, extract, and otherwise manipulate pages.
- Send For Review: Invite people to review a shared document and track responses.
- Comment: Add, search, read, reply to, import, and export comments.
- Fill & Sign: Complete and sign forms electronically.
- Adobe Sign: Get documents signed electronically and track results. (This tool may appear as Send For Signature in the Tools pane.)
- Enhance Scans: Make text editable, and otherwise improve the quality of scanned documents.
- Protect: Apply security features such as file encryption.



Working with tools

The commands and options you need in order to perform different tasks are grouped in the Tools pane on the right side of the application window. Additional tools are available in the Tools Center; you can access them directly from the Tools Center or add them to the Tools pane. When you select a tool, the user interface changes to provide the options related to that tool.

Selecting tools in the Tools pane

To become familiar with using tools, you'll rotate a page and edit some text.

1 Click Organize Pages in the Tools pane on the right side of the screen.



Acrobat displays thumbnail previews of each of the pages in the document, with page numbers shown beneath them. The Organize Pages toolbar appears below the main Acrobat toolbar.

2 Click the page 9 thumbnail. Four icons appear near the selected thumbnail: two rotation icons, a trash icon, and an insertion icon.

The map of Meridien on page 9 is oriented incorrectly. You'll correct it.

3 Click the clockwise rotation icon.



The page rotates to the correct orientation, and no other pages are affected.

- **4** Click the Close button at the end of the Organize Pages toolbar to return to the main document view.
- **5** Click Edit PDF in the Tools pane.



The Edit PDF toolbar appears below the main Acrobat toolbar. On the right side of the application window, a pane displays options related to editing text and images. The document window displays the current page. By default, Edit is selected in the Edit PDF toolbar.

When you select a tool, the user interface changes to show you the options and content you need to effectively use that tool. How it changes varies from tool to tool.

6 In the main toolbar, type 12 in the page number box, and then press Enter or Return to go to that page.

Because Edit is selected in the Edit PDF toolbar, editable content is outlined on the page. A box appears around the text. The pointer changes to an I-beam when you move it over the text.

- 7 Select the word *and* in the second sentence of the Wireless Internet Access topic.
- **8** Type **but** to replace the word *and*.

Conference via 802.11 b/g high-Meridien Conference and may not be nect to is meridien. You are welcome ess our network, available throughout le technical support or assistance with urity. Because this is an open network, ot want exposed. For privacy, we server when accessing network services Conference via 802.11 b/g high-<u>Meridien</u> Conference but may not be nnect to is <u>meridien</u>. You are welcome ess our network, available throughout le technical support or assistance with urity. Because this is an open network, ot want exposed. For privacy, we server when accessing network services

- 9 Click Close in the Edit PDF toolbar to close the Edit PDF tool.
- **10** Choose File > Save As.
- 11 Navigate to the Lesson01/Finished_Projects folder, name the file Conference Guide_final.pdf, and click Save. Leave the file open.

Navigating PDF documents

You can zoom in and out, move to different pages, show multiple pages at a time, view multiple documents, and even split a document to view different areas of the same document simultaneously. Many navigation tools are available in more than one place; you can use the method that best suits your workflow.

Changing magnification

Earlier in this lesson, you used the Zoom In and Zoom Out tools, as well as the preset magnification menu, all in the toolbar. You can also change the magnification using commands in the View menu.

• Note: If the original font is not available, Acrobat substitutes a default font and displays a tooltip informing you that the font has been substituted.

- Choose File > Open, navigate to the Meridien Rev.pdf file in the Lesson01/ Assets folder, and click Open.
- **2** Choose View > Zoom > Fit Height.

The entire PDF document is displayed, fitting the height of the application window.

- **3** Choose View > Zoom > Zoom To.
- 4 In the Zoom To dialog box, type 125 for Magnification, and then click OK.

Zoom To	×
Magnification: 125	~
ОК	Cancel
7	

Accessing specific pages

You've used the page number text box in the Acrobat toolbar to go to a specific page. You can also use commands in the View menu or use the Page Thumbnails panel in the navigation pane to quickly move to a different page in the document.

- 1 Click the Conference Guide_final.pdf tab to display the file you worked with earlier. If the Conference Guide_final.pdf file isn't open, open it.
- **2** Choose View > Page Navigation > Go To Page.
- **3** In the Go To Page dialog box, type 7, and click OK.

		Schedule-at-a-Glance see [see]see [see]see [see]see [see]see [see]see
		Senday Instance and examine Instance and examine Instance Another Instanc
o To Page	×	Market Barrier (Market Barrier) Market Barrier (Market Ba
Page: 7 of 12		Grave Data Using Bancer basis Name Bancer basis Bancer basis Wednesday Europer basis Bancer basis Bancer basis Europer basis Bancer basis

Acrobat displays page 7 of the document.

4 Choose View > Page Navigation > Previous Page.

Acrobat displays page 6 of the document. The Previous Page and Next Page commands serve the same purpose as the Previous Page and Next Page buttons in the Acrobat toolbar.

- **5** If the navigation pane isn't visible, click the arrow on the left side of the application window to open it.
- 6 In the navigation pane, click the Page Thumbnails button (P).

Acrobat displays thumbnails of all the pages in the document. Acrobat automatically creates thumbnails for the pages of a PDF document when you open it.

7 Click the thumbnail for page 3.



Acrobat displays page 3 of the document.

8 Zoom in to 200%. Notice that the thumbnail highlights the area of the page that is visible at this magnification.



- 9 Select the Hand tool (0) in the toolbar.
- **10** Drag in the document window to see a different area of the page. Notice that the highlighted area in the thumbnail moves accordingly.

Using bookmarks to navigate documents

You can create bookmarks to help viewers navigate PDF documents. Bookmarks act as an electronic table of contents page, providing links directly to the content they describe.

1 Click the Bookmarks button (□) directly below the Page Thumbnails button in the navigation pane.

Acrobat displays the bookmarks that have been created for this PDF document.

- Bookmarks × (D) Conference Attendee Guide Q Message from the Mayor What Is the City of Meridien Conference? Meridien Wi-Fi Why Participate? Conference Highlights Schedule at a Glance General Sessions Map of Meridien General Information
- 2 Click the Meridien Wi-Fi bookmark.

Acrobat displays page 4, which contains information about Meridien wireless access.

3 Click the General Sessions bookmark.

Acrobat displays page 8, where the descriptions of the conference sessions begin. You do not need to create a bookmark for each page.

4 Click the General Information bookmark.

Acrobat displays page 10, where the general information begins. You'll create another bookmark to help conference attendees locate information about accessing first aid quickly. ▶ Tip: You can create bookmarks for a PDF document in Acrobat, or you can generate them automatically when you create the PDF using PDFMaker or when you export a PDF file from InDesign.
- **5** Click the Next Page button (④) in the Acrobat toolbar to go to page 11.
- 6 Select the Selection tool (ℕ) in the toolbar, and then select the "First aid information" heading on the page.
- 7 Click the New Bookmark button (L) at the top of the Bookmarks panel.

Ð	Bookmarks X	12		^
ц 0	 Conference Attendee Guide Message from the Mayor What Is the City of Meridien Conference? Meridien Wi-Fi Why Participate? Conference Highlights Schedule at a Glance General Sessions Map of Meridien General Information First aid information 	4		•

Acrobat adds a new bookmark with the text you selected beneath the General Information bookmark.

8 Drag the new bookmark over the General Information bookmark (directly over the words "General Information") until you see a small triangle, and then release the mouse button.



Acrobat indents the new bookmark, nesting it under the General Information bookmark.

9 Close the Bookmarks pane.

Viewing multiple documents

You can work with more than one PDF file at a time, displaying the documents vertically or horizontally. You've opened two PDF documents; you'll view them next to each other.

1 Choose Window > Tile > Vertically.



Acrobat displays all the open PDF files side by side. Notice that each document has its own application window, complete with toolbars and panes.

2 Choose Window > Tile > Horizontally.

Acrobat displays the PDF documents in their own application windows once again, but this time they're displayed horizontally.

3 Choose Window > Cascade.

Acrobat displays the active document in front of the others, but you can see the title bar for each of the other open documents.

4 Adjust the windows so you can see the toolbar for each document. Then drag the tab from one of the documents next to the tab for the other; you'll see a blue line. Drop the tab there to return to the standard tabbed document view.



Splitting the view of a document

Sometimes you need to work with different portions of a single document simultaneously, whether it's to ensure you've used consistent wording or to examine differences in images. You can split a document into two views, with the ability to navigate each individually.

 Click the Conference Guide_final.pdf tab to make it active, and then choose Window > Split.

Acrobat displays the same document twice, each with its own scroll bar. Notice that both copies of the document share the same toolbars and panes.

- 2 Click anywhere in the top version of the document. It's now the active view.
- **3** Click the Previous Page button to go to the previous page in the top view. Only the top view changes.
- 4 Click anywhere in the bottom view to make it active.
- 5 Zoom in to 150%. Only the bottom view changes.



6 Choose Window > Remove Split.

Acrobat restores the document to a single view, displaying whichever view was active when you chose the Remove Split command.

7 Close all open documents without saving changes.

Viewing PDF presentations in Full Screen mode

You can set up a PDF file to be viewed in Full Screen mode, or choose to view any document that way. In Full Screen mode, the menu bar and toolbars are hidden.

- 1 Choose File > Open, and double-click the Aquo_Financial.pdf file, located in the Lesson01/Assets folder.
- **2** Click Yes in the Full Screen message box to open this document in Full Screen mode.



Notice that in Full Screen mode the document occupies all available space on the monitor. All the Acrobat toolbars, menus, and panes have disappeared.

This document is an informational presentation, designed to be viewed exclusively onscreen. The graphics, large type size, and horizontal page layout have been designed for optimal display on a monitor.

You can view any PDF file in Full Screen mode by opening the document in Acrobat and choosing View > Full Screen Mode.

- **3** Press Enter or Return to page through the presentation. You can also use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move forward and backward.
- 4 Press the Esc key to exit Full Screen mode.

5 To ensure that navigation controls are always accessible to you, even in Full Screen mode, choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), and select Full Screen from the list of categories in the Preferences dialog box. Select the Show Navigation Bar option, and click OK to apply your changes.

references	
Categories:	Full Screen Setup
Commenting A Documents Full Screen General Page Display	Current document only Fill screen with one page at a time Alert when document requests full screen Which monitor to use: This Monitor
Accessibility Action Wizard Adobe Online Services Catalog Color Management Content Editing Convert From PDF	Full Screen Navigation

From this point on, whenever you open a document in Acrobat on your computer in Full Screen mode, Acrobat will display Next Page, Previous Page, and Exit Full Screen View buttons at the bottom left of the document window. The buttons appear when you first view the document in Full Screen mode, and then disappear so that they don't obstruct the presentation. To access the buttons, move the pointer over the lower left corner of the screen. Keep in mind that Full Screen viewing preferences are specific to the computer on which you run a PDF presentation, not to the document.

To set a file to open in Full Screen mode, choose File > Properties, click the Initial View tab in the Document Properties dialog box, select Open In Full Screen Mode, and click OK. Then save the document. For more information, see Lesson 4, "Enhancing PDF Documents."

ocument Properties		;
Description Security	Fonts Initial View Custom Advanced	
Layout and Magnifica	lion	
Navigation tab:	Page Only 👻	
Page layout:	Single Page	
Magnification:	Default ~	
Open to page:	1 of 8	
Window Options		
Center window t	o initial page	
Open in Full Scre	en mode	

Viewing PDF files in Read mode

You can maximize the screen space available to your PDF document without entering Full Screen mode. Read mode hides all the elements of the work area except the document and the menu bar.

- 1 Choose View > Read Mode.
- **2** Move the pointer near the bottom of the window.



A floating toolbar appears briefly when you move the pointer near the bottom of the page. This floating toolbar includes navigational tools that let you zoom in and out, move to different pages, and save or print the file.

- 3 To restore the work area, click the Show Main Toolbar button (☑) in the floating toolbar, or choose View > Read Mode again.
- **4** Choose File > Close, and close the file without saving any changes.

Setting Acrobat preferences for web browsing

You can set the Acrobat Internet preferences to determine how Acrobat loads and displays PDF files from the Internet.

In Acrobat, choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (Mac OS), and select Internet from the categories on the left. By default, several Internet preference options are automatically selected.

- **Display In Read Mode By Default** displays PDF files without toolbars or panes, so that all that appears is a semitransparent floating toolbar when you move your mouse over the lower area of the PDF file. If you deselect this option, PDF files open with toolbars and panes.
- Allow Fast Web View downloads PDF documents for viewing on the web one page at a time. If this option is not selected, the entire PDF file downloads before it is displayed.
- Allow Speculative Downloading In The Background enables a PDF document to continue downloading from the web, even after the first requested page displays. Downloading in the background stops when any other task, such as paging through the document, is initiated in Acrobat.

For help setting up your browser to enable you to view PDF documents in it, click the link at the top of the Web Browser Options area of the Preferences dialog box to see instructions.

Customizing the Acrobat toolbar

The Acrobat toolbar includes a few commonly used tools by default. You can add tools you use frequently through the Show/Hide commands or by adding them to the Quick Tools section of the toolbar. Changes you make to the toolbar are application-wide, so the toolbar appears the same in any PDF file (until you change the toolbar settings again).

- 1 Open any document in Acrobat so that you have access to the toolbars.
- 2 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Page Navigation Tools > Previous View.

The Previous View button appears in the toolbar, just to the left of the page number.

• Note: If the Previous View button is already in the toolbar, the command in step 2 removes it. 3 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Edit Tools > Undo.



The Undo button appears in the toolbar, next to the Find button. You may have noticed that the Show/Hide options add commands from the File, Edit, and View menus to the toolbar, positioned in the toolbar according to their menu and submenu (such as Page Navigation).

The Quick Tools area of the toolbar contains tools you add through the Tools pane. Almost every tool is available.

4 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Customize Quick Tools.

The Customize Quick Tools dialog box opens. The tools currently in the Quick Tools toolbar are displayed across the top of the dialog box. Tools you can add are listed below. You'll add the Rotate Left and Rotate Right tools to the toolbar.

- 5 Click Organize Pages to expand it.
- 6 Select the Left tool (∩), and then click the Add To Toolbar button (o↑) to add the tool to the set at the top.
- 7 Select the Right tool (Ω) , and then click the Add To Toolbar button.



- 8 Click Organize Pages to collapse the section again, and then click Create PDF to expand it.
- 9 Select PDF From File, and click the Add To Toolbar button.

You've added three buttons to the Quick Tools area of the toolbar. You can rearrange tools, add dividers to organize them visually, and delete tools.

- **10** With the PDF From File tool still selected, click the left arrow button at the top of the dialog box twice to move it to the left of the rotation tools.
- **11** Click the Add Divider button at the top of the dialog box to add a divider between the PDF From File tool and the rotation tools.

Tools to show in Toolbar:	
୭⊿୯⊕୦୦ ଦ	12
Choose tools to add:	
* Create PDF	^
PDF from File	
Autodetect Color Mode	
Black & White	
Grayscale	
Color Document	
Color Image	
Custom Scan	
PDF from Web Page	
PDF from Clipboard	
00	~

When you click the Add Divider button, Acrobat inserts a divider immediately after the currently selected tool. You can move a divider just as you move a tool, using the right and left arrow buttons at the top of the dialog box.

12 Click Save to save your changes.

The tools and divider you added appear on the right end of the toolbar.

Customizing the brightness of the user interface

By default, Acrobat displays a light gray user interface. It may be easier to see some files accurately with a darker interface. To change the brightness, choose View > Display Theme > Dark Gray.



Tip: To automatically add the tools you use frequently to the toolbar, choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Recently Used Tools.

Getting help

The lessons in this book focus on commonly used tools and features in Acrobat DC. However, you can get complete information on all the Acrobat tools, commands, and features for both Windows and macOS systems from Adobe Acrobat DC Help online. To access Help, choose Help > Online Support. Acrobat opens your default browser and displays the Acrobat Help page online. In addition to the Help topics, the Acrobat Help page provides links to tutorials to help you learn Acrobat, user forums, and other community resources related to Adobe Acrobat.

If you do not have an Internet connection, Acrobat displays a message suggesting you verify your Internet connection. If you plan to work in Acrobat without an Internet connection, you can download the Acrobat Help topics as a PDF document from the Adobe Acrobat DC Help And Support page, and then open and search the PDF file as you would any other.

Review questions

- 1 Name two advantages of PDF documents.
- 2 How do you navigate to a different page in Acrobat?
- 3 How can you return to your usual work area from Full Screen mode?

Review answers

- **1** PDF provides several advantages, including the following:
 - PDF preserves the exact layout, fonts, and text formatting of electronic documents, regardless of the computer system or platform used to view these documents.
 - PDF documents can contain multiple languages, such as Japanese and English, on the same page.
 - PDF documents print predictably, with proper margins and page breaks.
 - You can secure PDF files to prevent unauthorized changes or printing, or to limit access to confidential documents.
 - You can change the view magnification of a PDF page in Acrobat or Acrobat Reader, which is especially useful for zooming in on graphics or diagrams containing intricate details.
- **2** To navigate to a different page, you can do any of the following:
 - Click the Next Page or Previous Page button in the Acrobat toolbar.
 - Type a page number in the Acrobat toolbar.
 - Choose a command from the View > Page Navigation menu.
 - Click a thumbnail in the Page Thumbnails panel in the navigation pane.
 - Click a bookmark in the Bookmarks panel in the navigation pane.
- **3** To exit Full Screen mode and return to your normal work area, press the Esc key on your keyboard.

2 CREATING ADOBE PDF FILES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Convert a TIFF file to Adobe PDF using the Create PDF tool.
- Convert a file to Adobe PDF using the authoring application's Print command.
- Convert multiple documents into a single PDF file.
- Explore the Adobe PDF settings used to convert files to Adobe PDF.
- Reduce the size of a PDF file.
- Scan a paper document into Acrobat.
- Convert scanned images into searchable text.
- Convert web pages to Adobe PDF from Acrobat and directly from a web browser.



This lesson will take approximately 60 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



You can easily create PDF files from existing files, such as Microsoft Word documents, web pages, scanned documents, and images.

Tip: If you have an Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, you can convert Microsoft Office and image files to PDF using the Acrobat DC mobile app. To learn more, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on mobile devices."

• Note: When you're creating a PDF from within Acrobat, you must have the application that created the original file installed on your system.

About creating Adobe PDF files

You can convert a variety of file formats to Adobe PDF, preserving all the fonts, formatting, graphics, and color of the source file, regardless of the application and platform used to create it. You can create PDF files from images, document files, websites, scanned paper documents, and clipboard content.

If the document you want to convert to PDF is open in its authoring application (for example, a spreadsheet is open in Excel), you can usually convert the file to PDF without opening Acrobat. But if Acrobat is already open, you don't have to open the authoring application to convert a file to PDF.

When you create a PDF file, consider file size and quality (image resolution, for example). When such factors are critical, use a method that allows you to control conversion options. Dragging and dropping files on the Acrobat icon to create PDF files is fast and easy, but if you want more control over the process, use another method, such as using the Create PDF tool in Acrobat or the Print command in the authoring application. After you specify conversion settings, the settings apply across PDFMaker and Acrobat until you change them.

Lesson 7, "Using Acrobat with Microsoft Office Files," describes how to create Adobe PDF files directly from a variety of Microsoft Office applications. Lesson 8, "Combining Files," covers the conversion of multiple file types as you combine files into a single PDF document. In Lesson 13, "Using Acrobat in Professional Printing," you'll learn how to create press-quality PDF files.

If the security settings applied to an Adobe PDF file allow it, you can also reuse the content of the document. You can extract content for use in another authoring application, such as Microsoft Word, or you can reflow the content for use with handheld devices or screen readers. The success with which content can be repurposed or reused depends very much on the structural information contained in the PDF file. The more structural information a PDF document contains, the more opportunities you have for successfully reusing the content, and the more reliably a document can be used with screen readers. (For more information, see Lesson 3, "Reading and Working with PDF Files.")

Using the Create PDF tool

You can use the Create PDF tool in Acrobat to convert a variety of file types, including both image and non-image files, to Adobe PDF. You'll convert a single TIFF image to an Adobe PDF file.

- 1 Start Acrobat, if it's not already open.
- 2 Click Tools to open the Tools Center.
- 3 Click the Create PDF tool in the Create & Edit category.

Home Tools		Acrobat Pro DC	
Q Search tools			
Create & Edit			
	t.	2	
Create PDF	Combine Files	Organize Pages	Edit PDF
Open •	Open 💌	Open 💌	Open 💌

Acrobat displays a list of options for creating a PDF file. Using the Create PDF tool, you can create a PDF document from one or multiple files, a screenshot, a scanned image, a website, clipboard contents, or a blank page. All your options are easily accessible here. Single File is selected by default.

4 With Single File selected, click Select A File.

oreale a Fi	DF from any format
Single File	
Multiple Files	
Screenshot	
Scanner	
Web Page	Select a File
Clipboard	Choose from .d ^m .xlsx, .txt, etc. Check more formats
Blank Page	Advanced Settings

5 In the Open dialog box, navigate to the Lesson02/Assets folder on your hard drive, and select the GC_VendAgree.tif file. Then click Open.

A thumbnail image of the selected file appears, with the filename beneath it.

6 Click Advanced Settings.

The settings options vary depending on the file type you've selected. For a TIFF image, the Adobe PDF Settings dialog box includes options for scan optimization, image compression, and color management.

Multiple Files	wa internati internati Parante Anton Jonang A. 1980	Adobe PDF Settings
Screenshot		Scan Optimization Settings Compression
Scanner		Monochrome: JBIG2 (Lossless) Grayscale: JPEG (Quality : Medium)
Web Page	GC_VendAgree.tif	Color: JPEG (Quality : Medium)
Cliphoard	Change File	Color Management
Clipboard		RGB: Preserve embedded profiles
Blank Page	Advanced Settings	CMYK: Off
0		Grayscale: Off
		Other: Preserve embedded profiles

You can also review and edit the settings used to convert your files to PDF in the Convert To PDF panel of the Preferences dialog box.

- 7 Click Cancel to leave the settings unchanged for this document.
- 8 Click Create.

								G	C_Vend	Agree p	df						
lome	Tools		GC_Vend	Agree.pdf	ж												🗭 🕐 🌲
1 4	•		Q (•	1	/ 1	k	•	Θ	\oplus	85.8%	÷	B -	Ш. Ф	Þ	l	🖞 Share
															1	500	rch tools
									ցլ	o b	ald	b	rp.			1	Create PDF
									-		-	2				t	Combine Files
		NON DIS		AGREEM	ENT											-	Edit PDF
		Effective Da	ite of Agree	ment												[]	Export PDF
	1	yan	ary 26	, 80%												ST	4.00002000
		V		0	2 - DA			-								1.11	Organize Pages
		In this agre hat. Globa	ement I, 1 Corporatio	Sarah on (bereaf)	er refer	ed to as Ti	om	Re.	l Da furnishe	t- d or discle	, acknowle osed certain	dge				D	Send for Review
		In this agre that Globa proprietary Company. unything at	ement I, l Corporation data and co I agree to to sout who I a	Sacal on (hereaf) onfidential i reat such in um working	ler refer nformation formation	ed to as The ion relating in as highly nature of the	om te Compt to the bi confider te project	Re- iny) has a usiness at utial and t or the ty	L Da turnisher flairs an will not, ype of w	d or discle d operatio at any tir ork unles	, acknowle osed certain ns of The ne, disclose a expressly give	dge ven				6. 9	Send for Review

Acrobat converts the TIFF file to Adobe PDF and opens the PDF file automatically.

• Note: If the Advanced Settings option is dimmed, there are no additional settings available for that file type. 9 Choose Fit One Full Page from the Fit pop-up menu (\□) on the Page Controls toolbar so that you can see the entire agreement.

• Note: The Fit pop-up menu icon changes to reflect the current view.

Notice that the handwritten note that the signer of the agreement has added is preserved in the Adobe PDF file.



10 Choose File > Save As, name the file GC_VendAgree.pdf, and save it in the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder. Then choose File > Close to close the PDF file.

Saving PDF files to cloud accounts

You can save PDF files directly to your Box, Dropbox, Google Drive, OneDrive, or Sharepoint account. In Acrobat DC, choose File > Save As, and then click Add Account in the pane on the left. Click Add beneath the type of account you want to add, and then sign in and agree to share access with Acrobat. Once you've added an account, it appears among the storage options on the left side of the Save As PDF dialog box. To save the current PDF file directly to your account, choose File > Save As, select the account, name the file, and click Save.



Dragging and dropping files

You can also create Adobe PDF files from many documents simply by dragging the file onto the Acrobat icon or into the document pane in Acrobat (Windows). Acrobat uses the conversion settings you specified the last time you converted a file.

Experiment with dragging the RoadieDog.jpg, Pumpkin.jpg, LoyalFan.jpg, and Tulips.jpg files from the Lesson02/Assets folder into the Acrobat document pane (Windows), onto the Acrobat icon on your desktop, or onto the Acrobat icon in the Dock (macOS). Close any open PDF files when you are finished. You can save the newly created PDF files or close them without saving.



Converting different types of files

You can use the Multiple Files option in the Create PDF tool to easily convert different types of files to Adobe PDF and combine them into one PDF file. If you're using Acrobat Pro, you can also assemble multiple documents into a PDF Portfolio. You'll learn more about combining files and creating PDF Portfolios in Lesson 8, "Combining Files."

Now, you'll convert a file to Adobe PDF and combine it with several other PDF files.

Assembling the files

First, you'll select the files you want to combine, and specify which pages to include. You'll combine a JPEG image file with several PDF files, but you'll include only a single page from one of the PDF documents.

- In Acrobat, click Tools, and then click the Create PDF tool in the Create & Edit category.
- 2 Select Multiple Files, and then select Combine Files, and click Next.

Create PDF	
Create a	PDF from any format
Single File	Create a single PDF from multiple files
Screenshot	 Create Multiple PDF Files Convert multiple files into PDFs at the same time
Scanner	Create PDF Portfolio
Web Page	Aggregate and organize multiple types of files into a PDF package
Clipboard	
Blank Page	
	Next

Acrobat opens the Combine Files tool so that you can assemble your documents.

3 Click the Add Files button.



Now you'll select the files that you want to convert and combine. The types of files that you can convert will vary depending on whether you are working in Windows or macOS.

- 4 In the Add Files dialog box, navigate to the MultipleFiles folder in the Lesson02/Assets folder. Make sure that All Supported Formats is selected in the Show menu. (In macOS, click Options to see the Show menu.)
- **5** Select the Ad.pdf file. Then Shift-click the Data.pdf file to select the bottle.jpg and Data.pdf files, too.



6 Click Open (Windows) or Add Files (macOS).

You can add files in any order, because you can rearrange them in the Combine Files window. You can also use the Remove button to remove any unwanted files. 7 If you see a list of files, click the Switch To Thumbnail View icon in the Combine Files toolbar. Then drag the thumbnail of the bottle.jpg file to the right of the Data.pdf file.



You can convert all pages in a file, or you can select a specific page or range of pages to convert.

- 8 Hover the mouse over the Data.pdf file, and then click the Expand 8 Pages button (()) to see thumbnails of each page in the file.
- 9 Select the first page, and click the Remove button in the Combine Files toolbar.



• Note: The Combine Files toolbar includes labels in Windows, but displays only icons in macOS. The macOS version is shown here.

- **10** Remove pages 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7 of the Data.pdf file, so that you're left with four thumbnails: Ad.pdf, Data.pdf pages 3 and 8, and bottle.jpg.
- **11** Click the Options button (🏟) to specify settings for the PDF file conversion.



12 In the Options dialog box, make sure the middle icon (Default File Size) is selected for File Size and that Save As PDF Portfolio is **not** selected. Then click OK.



The Default File Size option produces a PDF file suitable for viewing and printing business documents. The Smaller File Size option optimizes files for web distribution. Use the Larger File Size option to prepare documents for high-quality printing.

13 Click Combine.

Acrobat converts any native files into PDF and then consolidates all the selected files into a single file, named Binder1.pdf. The file opens automatically.



- **14** Use the Next Page (④) and Previous Page (⑦) buttons to page through your consolidated documents.
- **15** Choose File > Save As. Save the file to the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder, and rename the file **Aquo.pdf**. Click Save.

Without leaving Acrobat, you have converted a JPEG file to Adobe PDF and combined it with other PDF files.

16 Choose File > Close to close the file.

Inserting a blank page

In Acrobat, you can insert blank pages into a PDF file, which makes it easy to create a transition page or a notes page.

- 1 In Acrobat, open the Aquo.pdf file you created, and click the Organize Pages tool in the Tools pane.
- 2 Choose Insert > Blank Page. In the Insert Pages dialog box, choose After from the Location menu, and select Last in the Page area of the dialog box. Then click OK.



Acrobat adds a blank page, matching the dimensions of the page that preceded it.

3 Choose Edit PDF from the Tools menu on the left side of the Organize Pages toolbar.

The blank page is displayed in the document pane; editing tools are available in the right-hand pane.

- 4 Click Add Text in the Edit PDF toolbar.
- 5 Move the pointer over the page; it turns into an I-beam. Click an insertion point at the top of the page.
- 6 In the Format area of the right-hand pane, change the font (we used Adobe Garamond Pro Bold).
- 7 Type Notes. Use the Format options to change text attributes, including font size and color.



8 Close the file. You can save your changes if you want to.

Using PDFMaker

When you install Adobe Acrobat DC, the installer adds Acrobat PDFMaker buttons or menu commands to supported applications, including Microsoft Office applications, Google Chrome (Windows), Mozilla Firefox, Autodesk AutoCAD, and others. PDFMaker options vary from one application to another, but they always give you the ability to quickly create a PDF file from the source application file. Depending on the application, you can also use PDFMaker to add bookmarks, tag the PDF document to make it more accessible, add security features, or include layers in the PDF file.

For specific information about using PDFMaker in Office, see Lesson 7, "Using Acrobat with Microsoft Office Files." To use PDFMaker in web browsers, see "Converting web pages to Adobe PDF" later in this lesson.

Using the Print command to create Adobe PDF files

As you saw earlier in this lesson, you can easily create Adobe PDF files using the Create PDF tool in Acrobat. However, you can also create an Adobe PDF file from almost any application by using the application's Print command with the Adobe PDF printer (Windows) or the Save As Adobe PDF option (macOS).

Printing to the Adobe PDF printer (Windows)

The Adobe PDF printer isn't a physical printer like one that might sit in your office. Rather, it is a simulated printer that converts your file to Adobe PDF instead of printing it to paper. The printer name is Adobe PDF.

You can use this technique from almost any application, regardless of whether the application has built-in features for creating PDF files. You should be aware, however, that the Adobe PDF printer creates untagged PDF files. (A tagged structure is required for reflowing content to a handheld device and is preferable for producing reliable results with a screen reader.)

The Adobe PDF printer is an easy and convenient way to create a PDF file from almost any document. However, if you're working with Microsoft Office files, the Create Adobe PDF buttons or the Acrobat ribbon (both of which use PDFMaker) let you create tagged documents and include bookmarks and hypertext links.

You'll convert a text file to Adobe PDF using the Print command with the Adobe PDF printer. Steps may vary depending on the application and which version of Windows you are using.

- 1 Open WordPad, a text editor that comes with Windows. You can choose the application from your Start menu (it's in the Windows Accessories group in Windows 10), or type WordPad in the search bar, and then double-click the file.
- 2 In WordPad, click the menu or File tab, and choose Open.
- 3 Navigate to the Lesson02/Assets folder, and double-click the Memo.txt file.
- 4 In WordPad, click the menu or File tab, and choose Print.
- 5 Choose Adobe PDF from the list of printers. You may need to scroll to see it.

To change the settings used to convert the text file to Adobe PDF, click Preferences in the Print dialog box or Properties in the Page Setup dialog box. For more information, see the "Adobe PDF Presets" sidebar later in this lesson.

6 Click Print.

General	
Select Printer	
Adobe PDF	
Tax Giffice Laser Printer	
٤	>
Status: Ready	Print to file Preferences
Comment:	Find Printer
Page Range	
Al	Number of copies: 1
○ Selection ○ Current Page	
O Pages: 1-65535	Collate
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	11 22 33

- 7 Save the file using the default name (Memo.pdf) in the Lesson02/Finished_ Projects folder, and click Save in the Save PDF File As dialog box.
- 8 If the PDF file doesn't open automatically, navigate to the Lesson02/Finished_ Projects folder, and double-click the Memo.pdf file to open it in Acrobat. When you have reviewed the file, close it, and quit WordPad.
- 9 Close any open files.

Printing with the Save As Adobe PDF option (macOS)

In macOS, use the Save As Adobe PDF option in the PDF menu in the Print dialog box to print from any application.

1 From your desktop, navigate to the Lesson02/Assets folder, and double-click the Memo.txt file.

The text file opens in a text editor such as TextEdit.

- 2 Choose File > Print. It doesn't matter which printer is selected.
- **3** Click the PDF button at the bottom of the dialog box, and choose Save As Adobe PDF.



• Note: In some applications, such as Adobe InDesign CC, click Printer in the Print dialog box to see the PDF menu.

- **4** In the Save As Adobe PDF dialog box, choose an Adobe PDF Settings file, and choose Adobe Acrobat from the After PDF Creation menu to open the PDF file in Acrobat.
- 5 Click Continue.
- 6 In the Save dialog box, accept the default name of Memo.pdf, and save the file to the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder.
- 7 Click Save.

The PDF file opens automatically, because you chose Adobe Acrobat from the After PDF Creation menu.

8 Review the file, close it, and quit the text editor application.

You have just converted a simple text document to an Adobe PDF document using the authoring application's Print command.

9 Close any open files.

Adobe PDF presets

A PDF preset is a group of settings that affect the process of creating a PDF file. These settings are designed to balance file size with quality, depending on how the PDF file will be used. Most predefined presets are shared across Adobe Creative Cloud applications, including Adobe InDesign®, Adobe Illustrator®, Adobe Photoshop®, and Acrobat. You can also create and share custom presets to meet your own needs.

For more detailed descriptions of each preset, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

- High Quality Print creates PDFs for good-quality printing on desktop printers and proofing devices.
- **Oversized Pages** creates PDFs suitable for viewing and printing engineering drawings larger than 200 by 200 inches.
- **PDF/A-1b** standards are used for the long-term preservation (archival) of electronic documents.
- PDF/X-1a standards minimize the number of variables in a PDF document to improve reliability. PDF/X-1a files are commonly used for digital ads that will be reproduced on a press.
- **PDF/X-3** files are similar to PDF/X-1a files, but they support color-managed workflows and allow some RGB images.
- PDF/X-4 has the same color-management ICC color specifications as PDF/X-3, but includes support for live transparency.
- **Press Quality** creates PDF files for high-quality print production (for example, for digital printing or for separations to an imagesetter or platesetter).
- **Smallest File Size** creates PDF files for displaying on the web or an intranet, or for distribution through an email system.
- Standard creates PDF files to be printed to desktop printers or digital copiers, published on a CD, or sent to a client as a publishing proof.

Reducing file size

The size of a PDF file can vary dramatically depending on the Adobe PDF settings used to create it. For example, files created using the High Quality Print preset are larger than files created using the Standard or Smallest File Size presets. Regardless of the preset used to create a file, you can often reduce the file size without having to regenerate the PDF file.

You'll reduce the size of the Ad.pdf file.

- In Acrobat, choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson02/Assets/MultipleFiles folder, and open the Ad.pdf file.
- 2 Choose File > Save As Other > Reduced Size PDF.
- 3 Select Acrobat 10.0 And Later for file compatibility, and click OK.

Be sure to choose a version of Acrobat that your intended audience is likely to have.

4 Name the modified file Ad_Reduce.pdf. Click Save to complete the process.

It is always a good idea to save a file using a different name so that you don't overwrite the unmodified file.

Acrobat automatically optimizes your PDF file, a process that may take a minute or two. Any anomalies are displayed in the Conversion Warnings window. If necessary, click OK to close that window.

5 Minimize the Acrobat window. Use Windows Explorer (Windows) or the Finder (macOS) to open the Lesson02/Assets/MultipleFiles folder and view the size of the Ad_Reduce.pdf file. The file size is smaller than that of the Ad.pdf file.



You can repeat steps 1–5 using different compatibility settings to see how they affect file size. Note that some settings might actually increase the file size.

Optimizing PDF files (Acrobat Pro only)

Many factors affect file size and file quality, but when you're working with imageintensive files, compression and resampling are important. In Acrobat DC Pro, PDF Optimizer gives you greater control over file size and quality.

To access PDF Optimizer, choose File > Save As Other > Optimized PDF.

In the PDF Optimizer dialog box, you can choose from a variety of file compression methods designed to reduce the file space used by color, grayscale, and monochrome images in your document. Which method you choose depends on the kind of images you are compressing. The default Adobe PDF presets use automatic (JPEG) compression for color and grayscale images and CCITT Group 4 compression for monochrome images. In addition to choosing a compression method, you can resample bitmap images in your file to reduce the file size. A bitmap image consists of digital units called pixels, whose total number determines the file size. When you resample a bitmap image, the information represented by several pixels in the image is combined to make a single larger pixel. This process is also called *downsampling*, because it reduces the number of pixels in the image. (When you downsample or decrease the number of pixels, information is deleted from the image.)

Neither compression nor resampling affects the quality of text or line art.

Standard	Delete	Save				A	udit space	usage
ent PDF Version: 1.7, A	dobe Extension Lev	el 8 (Acrobat X)	Ν	lake compati	ble with:	Retain existi	ng	0
Images	Image Settings							
Fonts	Color Images :							
Transparency Discard Objects	Downsample:	Bicubic Downsamplin	ng to 📀	150	ppi for i	mages above	225	ppi.
Discard User Data Clean Up	Compression:	JPEG 📀	Quality:	Medium	٢			
	Grayscale Imag	es:						
	Downsample:	Bicubic Downsamplin	ng to 📀	150	ppi for i	mages above	225	ppi
	Compression:	JPEG	Quality:	Medium	0			
	Monochrome In	nages :						
	Downsample:	Bicubic Downsamplin	ng to 😂	300	ppi for i	mages above	450	ppi
	Compression:	JBIG2	Quality:	Lossy	0			
					All	units are in pi	ixels per inc	h (ppi).
	🛃 Optimize imag	es only if there is a red	luction in si	ZØ				
	mn PDP version: 1.7, A mages Fonts Transparency Discard Objects Discard User Data Clean Up	Imporversion: L7, Addee extension Lev mages Fonts Fonts Color Images 2 Color Images: Downsample: Compression: Compression: Monochrome Im Downsample: Compression: Monochrome Im Downsample: Compression: 2 Optimize image	Images Image Settings Fonts Color Images : Discard Objects Downsample: Discard User Data Compression: Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsamplin: Compression: JPEG Ownsample: Bicubic Downsamplin: Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsamplin: Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsamplin: Compression: JPEG Optimize images only if there is a red	Images Image Settings Fonts Color Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Discard User Data Compression: Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Compression: JPEG Quality: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Compression: JPEG Quality: Monochrome Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Compression: JPEG Quality: Monochrome Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Compression: JBIG2 Quality: Images only if there is a reduction in si Images only if there is a reduction in si	Images Image Settings Fonts Color Images : Discard Objects Downsample: Discard User Data Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Tota Tota Color Images : Downsample: Discard User Data Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Compression: JPEG Quality: Monochrome Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Optimize images only if there is a reduction in size Q	Images Image Settings Fonts Color Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Discard User Data Compression: Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Images Settings Compression: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Grayscale Images : Downsample: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Monochrome Images : Downsample: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © Bicubic Downsampling to © 300 Ppi for i Compression: JBIG2 Quality: Lossy © All Images only if there is a reduction in size	Images Image Settings Fonts Color Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above Color Jpecto Compression: Jiscard User Data Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above Compression: JPEG Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 300 ppi for images above Compression: JBIG2 Quality: Lossy © All units are in pi Cotimize images only if there is a reduction in size Car	Image Settings Fonts Transparency Discard User Data Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 piscard User Data Clean Up Grayscale Images : Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above 225 Compression: JPEG Ownsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 150 ppi for images above 225 Compression: JPEG © Quality: Medium © Monochrome Images : Downsample: Downsample: Bicubic Downsampling to © 300 ppi for images above 450 Compression: JBIG2 Quality: All units are in pixels per inc © Optimize images only if there is a reduction in size

Creating files from the clipboard

You can copy content from any type of file, select Clipboard in the Create PDF tool, and then click Create to create a new PDF file. In macOS, you can also select Screenshot in the Create PDF tool to create a PDF file from a window or selection screen capture.

You can also easily add text and graphics that you have copied to the clipboard to an existing PDF. Open the PDF file, select the Organize Pages tool, and then choose Insert > From Clipboard.

Scanning a paper document

You can scan paper documents to PDF from a broad range of scanners, add metadata while scanning, and optimize your scanned PDF. In Windows, you can choose presets for black and white, grayscale, and color documents, as well as color images. These presets optimize the quality of your scanned documents. You can also define your own conversion settings.

If you do not have a scanner connected to your system, skip this exercise.

- 1 Insert any one-page document into your scanner, and do one of the following in Acrobat:
 - In Windows: Open the Create PDF tool, select Scanner, select the scanner you're using, and then select a preset for your document or accept the default. To customize the settings, click the Settings icon next to the preset you choose, and make changes. Click Scan.
 - In macOS: Open the Create PDF tool, select Scanner, select the scanner you're using, and click Next. Then select options in the Acrobat Scan dialog box, and click Scan.

Custom Scan			Restore Defaults
	Scanner Pages	Canon MF8500C Series (ICA) Front Sides	5 5
	Quality	Coptimize Image	Е
	Output	Append to File • Ad_Reduce.pdf • Browse	Ģ
		Add Metadata Make PDF/A-1b compliant	
		Scan Cancel Help	e
		7	

The scan occurs automatically.

2 When prompted, click OK to confirm that the scan is complete.

The PDF of the scanned document appears in Acrobat.

- 3 Choose File > Save, and save the scan in the Lesson02 folder as **Scan.pdf**.
- **4** Choose File > Close to close your document.

• Note: If Acrobat does not recognize your scanner, refer to your scanner documentation for setup instructions, or contact your scanner manufacturer for troubleshooting help.

Scan using mobile devices

Use your mobile phone or tablet as a scanner. The free Adobe Scan app uses your device's camera to scan a receipt, business card, or other document, automatically detecting borders, removing shadows, and recognizing text. It creates a PDF of the scan, saved to Adobe Document Cloud, so you can access it from anywhere.



Making scanned text editable and searchable

When you convert a file from an application such as Microsoft Word or Adobe InDesign to PDF, the text is fully editable and searchable. However, text in image files, whether scanned documents or files saved in an image format, is not editable and searchable. Using OCR (optical character recognition), Acrobat analyzes the image and replaces portions of it with discrete characters. It also identifies characters it may have analyzed incorrectly.

You'll apply OCR to the PDF document you created from a TIFF image.

- 1 Choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder, and open the GC_VendAgree.pdf file that you saved earlier.
- 2 Move the pointer over text in the document. You can select areas in the document, but Acrobat does not specifically select any of the text.

► Tip: Acrobat can perform OCR automatically when you scan images. Just make sure Recognize Text (OCR) is selected in the scanner preset (Windows) or Acrobat Scan dialog box (macOS) before you scan. 3 In the Tools pane, click Enhance Scans, and then choose Recognize Text > In This File.



A toolbar with text recognition options appears below the Enhance Scans toolbar.

- **4** Click Settings to edit the settings for the conversion.
- 5 In the Recognize Text dialog box, choose Editable Text And Images from the Output menu. Click OK to close the dialog box.
- 6 Click Recognize Text in the secondary toolbar.

nhance Scans		Enhance *		AA Recognize Text •		Bates Numbering *		Ca.	Q	Q	Û
Pages	Current Page	Ŧ	Language	English (US)	*	Settings	R	lecognize	Text		Cancel
									\mathbf{t}^{-}		

• Note: By default, Acrobat converts the document into a searchable image. You can use this setting to convert documents, but the Editable Text And Images option often provides more robust, accurate text conversion.

Acrobat converts the document.

7 Select a word on the page. Acrobat has converted the image to editable, searchable text.

	Recognize Text	
Pages		
 All pages Current page From page Settings 	to 1	Effective Date of Agreement
Document Language	English (US)	0 1
Output	Editable Text and Images	In this agreement I, <u>Sarah</u>
Downsample To	600 dpi	proprietary data and confidential info Company. I agree to treat such infor

- 8 Choose Recognize Text > Correct Recognized Text. Acrobat searches the document and identifies any words that may have been converted incorrectly. If it finds any suspect words, you can examine them and correct them as needed. If it doesn't contain any suspects, click OK.
- 9 Close the Enhance Scans tool.
- **10** Choose File > Save As. Navigate to the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder, and save the file as **GC_VendAgree_OCR.pdf**. Then close the file.

• Note: You may also need to use the Edit PDF tool to address issues with spacing.

Converting web pages to Adobe PDF

You can convert or "capture" an entire web page or several levels of a multipage website. You can define a page layout, set display options for fonts and other visual elements, and create bookmarks for web pages that you convert to Adobe PDF. The HTML file and all associated files—such as JPEG images, cascading style sheets, text files, image maps, and forms—are included in the conversion process, so the result-ing PDF behaves much like the original web page.

Because converted web pages are in Adobe PDF, you can easily save them, print them, email them to others, or archive them for your own use.

Converting web pages from within Acrobat

Because web pages are updated on a regular basis, when you visit the web pages described in this lesson, the content of the pages may have changed, and you may have to use links other than those described here. However, you should be able to apply the steps in this lesson to virtually any links on any website. If you are working inside a corporate firewall, for example, you might find it easier to complete this exercise substituting an internal site for the Adobe Press site or the Peachpit site.

Before you can download and convert web pages to Adobe PDF, you must be able to access the web.

Now you'll use the Create PDF tool to convert some web pages.

- 1 In Acrobat, open the Create PDF tool. (Click Tools to access tools if you're in Home view.)
- 2 Select Web Page, and then enter the address of the website you'd like to convert. (We used the Adobe Press website at www.adobepress.com.)
- **3** Select the Capture Multiple Levels option.

You control the number of converted pages by specifying the levels of site hierarchy you wish to convert, starting from your entered URL. For example, the top level consists of the page corresponding to the specified URL, the second level consists of pages linked from the top-level page, and so on. Consider the number and complexity of pages you may encounter when downloading more than one level of a website at a time. A complex site can take a very long time to download. Therefore, we don't recommend selecting Get Entire Site for most websites. Keep in mind that the time it takes to download pages depends on the speed of your Internet connection.

- **4** Make sure that the Get option is selected, and that 1 is selected for the number of levels.
- **5** Select Stay On Same Path to convert only pages that are subordinate to the URL you entered.
- 6 Select Stay On Same Server to download only pages on the same server as the URL you entered.
- **7** Click Create.

Create a	PDF from any format			
Single File	Enter URL or Select File www.adobepress.com Browse			
Multiple Files				
Screenshot	Capture Multiple Levels			
Scanner	Get 1 level(s) Get entire site			
Clipboard	Stay on same path			
Blank Page	Stay on same server			

The Download Status dialog box displays the status of the download in progress. When downloading and conversion are complete, the converted website appears in the Acrobat document window, with bookmarks in the Bookmarks panel.

In Windows, if you're downloading more than one level of pages, the Download Status dialog box moves to the background after the first level is downloaded.

If Acrobat cannot download any linked material, it returns an error message. Click OK to clear any error message.
8 Expand the navigation pane, and then click the Bookmarks button to see the bookmarks Acrobat created for the page.



• Note: The Adobe Press website changes its content frequently, so your PDF probably won't match ours.

- 9 Choose Fit One Full Page from the Fit pop-up menu (☐) on the Page Controls toolbar to fit the view of the converted web page to your screen.
- **10** Use the Next Page (④) and Previous Page (⑦) buttons to move through the pages if more than one page was created.

The converted website is navigable and editable just like any other PDF document. Acrobat formats the pages to reflect your page-layout conversion settings as well as the look of the original website.

11 Choose File > Save As, name the file Web.pdf, and save it in the Lesson02/ Finished_Projects folder.

Downloading and converting linked pages

When you click a web link in the Adobe PDF version of the web page that links to an unconverted page, you can download and convert that page to PDF, attaching it to the PDF document you created.

- 1 Navigate through the converted website until you find a web link to a page that wasn't included in your original conversion. We used the title of an article. (The pointer changes to a pointing finger when positioned over a web link, and a tooltip displays the URL of the link.)
- 2 Right-click (Windows) or Control-click (macOS) the link, and choose Append To Document from the context menu.

Adding Images and Text	Adding I	Open Weblink in Browser
In this sa http://www.adobepress.com/articles/article.aspx?	In this sample images plus	Append to Document
p=2873365 By Brian Wood - Apr 16, 2018	By Brian Wor	Open Weblink as New Document
by brian mood when to, boro	by brian wo	Copy Link Location

The Download Status dialog box appears again. When the download and conversion are complete, Acrobat displays the linked page, and adds a bookmark for the page to the Bookmarks list.



- 3 Choose File > Save As, rename the file Web1.pdf, and save it in the Lesson02/ Finished_Projects folder.
- 4 When you're finished looking at your converted web pages, close the PDF file.

Now you'll convert web pages directly from a browser.

Converting web pages in a web browser

If you've ever had the frustrating experience of printing a web page from your browser only to discover portions of the page missing, you'll appreciate the Acrobat feature that lets you create and print an Adobe PDF version of the web page without ever leaving your browser. You can use PDFMaker in Internet Explorer (Windows), Chrome (Windows), or Firefox (Windows or macOS) to convert the currently displayed web page to an Adobe PDF file. When you print a converted web page from Acrobat, the page is reformatted to a standard page size, and logical page breaks are added.

First, you'll explore the preferences used to create Adobe PDF pages from your web pages, and then you'll convert a page.

1 Open Firefox, Chrome (Windows only), or Internet Explorer (Windows only), and navigate to a favorite web page. We opened the Peachpit Press home page at www.peachpit.com.

• Note: In Firefox for macOS, preferences open in Acrobat.

2 Click the arrow next to the PDF button (1) in Internet Explorer; click the PDF button in Firefox or Chrome. Then choose Preferences from the menu. You can create bookmarks, include headers and footers, add tags, and change page layout features such as orientation.



• Note: PDFMaker add-ons are installed with Acrobat. If you install a browser application after installing Acrobat, reinstall Acrobat to install the add-on. If you don't see the PDF button in Internet Explorer, click the Tools icon, choose Manage Add-ons, and then make sure the Adobe Acrobat Create PDF Toolbar is enabled. In Firefox, choose Tools > Add-ons, and make sure the Adobe Acrobat DC - Create PDF 15 extension is enabled; you may also need to activate the Adobe Acrobat NPAPI plug-in. In Chrome, click the menu button, choose Tools > Extensions, and make sure the Adobe Acrobat - Create PDF extension is enabled. How PDFMaker is enabled may differ depending on your browser and the version of your operating system.

3 Click Cancel to exit the dialog box without making any changes.

Now you'll convert the web page to Adobe PDF.

- **4** Depending on your browser, click the PDF button, or click the arrow next to it to display the PDF menu. Then choose Convert Webpage To PDF.
- 5 In the Save As dialog box, navigate to the Lesson02/Finished_Projects folder. Enter a filename (we used **PeachpitHome.pdf**). Then click Save.

The default filename used by Acrobat is the text used in the HTML tag <TITLE>. Any invalid characters in the web page filename are converted to an underscore when the file is downloaded and saved.



The first level of the website is converted to PDF; the file opens in Acrobat.

6 When you are finished, close the browser, any open PDF files, and Acrobat.

Review questions

- 1 Name three ways to create a PDF file.
- 2 How do you print to PDF from an application in Windows?
- 3 How do you print to PDF from an application in macOS?
- 4 How can you convert an image file to searchable text?

Review answers

- 1 You can use the Create PDF tool to create a PDF file from almost any format, from a scanned document, from a web page, or from clipboard data. You can use PDFMaker to create a PDF file from within a supporting application, such as Microsoft Office for Windows. You can use the Print dialog box to create a PDF from almost any application.
- **2** To print to PDF from an application in Windows, select the Adobe PDF printer in the Print dialog box, specify your settings, and click Print.
- **3** To print to PDF from an application in macOS, click the PDF button in the Print dialog box, and then choose Save As Adobe PDF. Specify your settings, and click Save.
- 4 To convert an image file to searchable text, open the Enhance Scans tool, and then choose Recognize Text > In this File. Then click Recognize Text.

3 READING AND WORKING WITH PDF FILES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Navigate an Adobe PDF document.
- Change how a PDF document scrolls and displays in the document window.
- Search a PDF document for a word or phrase.
- Fill out a PDF form.
- Print all or a portion of a PDF document.
- Explore the accessibility features that make it easier for users with vision and motor impairments to use Acrobat.
- Add tags and alt text to a PDF document.
- Share a document with others electronically.



This lesson will take approximately 60 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



Get the most out of the PDF documents you create and read using navigational aids, accessibility features, search tools, and more. **Tip:** To see the printed size of your page, move your pointer into the lower left area of the document pane.

About the onscreen display

The magnification shown in the toolbar does not refer to the printed size of the page, but rather to how the page is displayed onscreen. At 100% view, each pixel in the page is represented by one screen pixel on your monitor.

How big the page appears onscreen depends on your monitor size and resolution setting. For example, when you increase the resolution of your monitor, you increase the number of screen pixels within the same monitor area. This results in smaller screen pixels and a smaller displayed page, since the number of pixels in the page itself stays constant.

Reading PDF documents

Acrobat provides a variety of ways for you to move through and adjust the onscreen magnification of a PDF document. For example, you can scroll through the document using the scroll bar at the right side of the window, or you can turn pages as in a traditional book using the Next Page and Previous Page buttons in the main toolbar. You can also jump to a specific page.

Browsing the document

You can move to different pages in a document using a variety of navigation methods.

- 1 In Acrobat, choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson03/Assets folder, and select the Fall Hiking.pdf file. Click Open.
- 2 Choose View > Zoom > Actual Size to resize your page.
- 3 Select the Hand tool () from the toolbar, and then position your pointer over the document. Hold down the mouse button. Notice that the pointer changes to a closed hand when you hold down the mouse button.
- **4** Drag the closed hand up and down in the window to move the page on the screen. This is similar to moving a piece of paper around on a desktop.



- 5 Press Enter or Return to display the next part of the page. You can press Enter or Return repeatedly to view the document from start to finish in screensized sections.
- 6 Choose View > Zoom > Zoom To Page Level, or choose Fit One Full Page from the Fit pop-up menu (➡) in the toolbar. Click the Previous Page button (♠) in the toolbar as many times as necessary to return to page 1.
- **7** Click once in an empty portion of the scroll bar. Or, in Windows, you can also position the pointer over the down arrow in the scroll bar and click.



The document scrolls automatically to display all of page 2. In the next few steps, you'll control how Acrobat scrolls and displays PDF pages.

You can also access the Actual Size, Zoom To Page Level, Fit Width, and Fit Visible commands by clicking the arrow to the right of the magnification pop-up menu in the toolbar.

8 Choose Fit To Width Scrolling from the Fit menu (∰) in the toolbar, and then use the scroll bar to scroll to page 3 of 4.



The Enable Scrolling option displays pages end to end, like frames in a filmstrip.

- 9 Choose View > Page Navigation > First Page to go back to the beginning of the document.
- **10** Choose Fit One Full Page from the Fit menu (⊣) in the toolbar to return to the original page layout.

You can use the page number box in the toolbar to move directly to a specific page.

11 Type **3** to replace the current page number, and press Enter or Return.

Acrobat displays page 3.

The scroll bar also lets you navigate to a specific page.

12 Begin dragging the scroll box upward in the scroll bar. As you scroll, a page preview box shows you the current page number. When you see page 2 of 4, release the mouse.



The second page is displayed.

Changing the page view magnification

You can change the magnification of the page view using controls in the toolbar and commands in the View menu.

- 1 Choose View > Zoom > Actual Size. The magnification changes to 100%.
- **2** Click the Next Page button (④) to move to page 3. Notice that the magnification remains the same.
- **3** In the toolbar, click the arrow to the right of the magnification text box to display the preset magnification options. Choose 200%.



You can also type in a specific value for the magnification in the text box.

4 Click the arrow to the right of the magnification box, and choose Actual Size to display the page at 100% again.

Next, you'll use the Zoom In button to magnify the view.

- 5 Select the page number, type 4, and press Enter or Return to go to page 4.
- **6** In the toolbar, click the Zoom In button () once.
- 7 Click the Zoom In button again to further increase the magnification.

Each click on a Zoom button increases or decreases the magnification by a set amount.

8 Click the arrow to the right of the magnification box, and choose Zoom To Page Level to see the entire page.

Now you'll use the Marquee Zoom tool to magnify the image. The Marquee Zoom tool is hidden by default, so you'll add it to the main toolbar.

- 9 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Select & Zoom Tools > Marquee Zoom to display the Marquee Zoom tool in the main toolbar.
- **10** Select the Marquee Zoom tool (). Position the pointer near the upper left corner of the image of the colorful walking sticks, and drag to the lower right corner of the walking sticks image.



or hide other tools in the main toolbar by choosing View > Show/ Hide > Toolbar Items, selecting a category, and then selecting the tool you want to display or hide.

Tip: You can show

The view zooms in on the area you enclosed.

11 Choose View > Zoom > Zoom To Page Level again.

Using the Dynamic Zoom tool

The Dynamic Zoom tool lets you zoom in or out by dragging the mouse up or down.

- 1 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Select & Zoom Tools > Dynamic Zoom to add the Dynamic Zoom button to the main toolbar.
- **2** Select the Dynamic Zoom tool (9).
- 3 Click in the document pane. Drag upward to zoom in, and drag down to zoom out.



4 When you're finished, select the Hand tool to deselect the Dynamic Zoom tool, and then choose Zoom To Page Level from the magnification box menu in the toolbar to see the entire page again.

Following links

One benefit of working with electronic documents is that you can convert traditional cross-references into links, which let users jump directly to the referenced section or file. For example, you can make each item in a table of contents a link that jumps to its corresponding area in the document. You can also use links to add interactivity to traditional book elements such as glossaries and indexes.

First, you'll add some navigational tools to the main toolbar.

1 Choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Show Page Navigation Tools > Show All Page Navigation Tools.



Now you'll use an existing link to move to a specific area in the document.

- **2** Click the First Page button (③) in the main toolbar to return to the first page.
- **3** Move the pointer over the special offer medallion. The Hand tool changes to a pointing finger, indicating the presence of a link. Click to follow the link.



This link sends you to page 4.

4 Click the Previous View button (ⓒ) to return to your previous view of page 1.

You can click the Previous View button at any time to retrace your viewing path through a document. The Next View button reverses the action of your last Previous View.

5 To restore the default toolbar configuration, choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items > Reset Toolbars.

Searching PDF documents

You can quickly search for a word or phrase in a PDF document. For example, if you wanted to find occurrences of the word *boot* in this document, you can use either the Find feature or the Search feature to locate that information. The Find feature locates a word or phrase in the active document. The Search feature locates a word or phrase in one document, across a selection of documents, or in a PDF Portfolio. Both features search text, layers, form fields, and digital signatures.

First, you'll use the Find command to find specific text in the open document.

1 Choose Edit > Find. In the text box in the toolbar that appears in the upper right corner of the application window, type **performance**.

To see the options available with the Find feature, click the arrow on the right side of the text box. You can refine your search, looking for whole words only or specifying uppercase or lowercase letters, and you can also include bookmarks and comments in the search. A check mark next to an option indicates that it is enabled (on).

2 Click Next to start the Find operation.



The first occurrence of *performance* is highlighted on page 2 of the document.

3 Click the Next button in the Find panel to find the next occurrence of the word. Acrobat reports that it found no more matches. Click OK to close the dialog box, and then close the Find panel.

Next, you'll perform a more sophisticated search of the document using the Search feature. In this exercise, you'll search only one document, but you can use the Search feature to search all documents in a folder as well as all documents in a PDF Portfolio. You can even search non-PDF files in a PDF Portfolio.

- 4 Choose Edit > Advanced Search.
- **5** To search only the open document, select In The Current Document.

In this search, you'll find references to trekking.

- 6 In the Search text box, enter **trek**.
- Click the Show More Options link at the bottom of the Search pane.
- 8 From the Return Results Containing pop-up menu, choose Match Any Of The Words. This ensures that the search will return all results for "trek," including words that contain additional letters, such as "trekking."
- 9 Click Search.

A Search	-3	×
Arrange Windows		
Look In:		
The Current Document	~	
What word or phrase would you like	to search for?	
Return results containing:		
Match Any of the words	~	
Use these additional criteria:		
Whole words only		
Case-Sensitive		
Proximity		
Stemming		
Include Bookmarks		
Include Comments		
Include Attachments		
	-	
	Search	

► Tip: You can also save your search results in Acrobat DC: Click the Save icon next to the New Search button in the Search pane, and then choose either Save Results To PDF or Save Results To CSV. The search results are displayed in the Search pane.

10 Click any search result to go to the page that contains that information.



You can check any of the other search results in the Search pane by clicking them.

11 When you're finished, close the Search pane.

In addition to text in the document, the Search feature searches object data and image metadata. When you search multiple PDF documents, Acrobat also looks at the document properties and XMP metadata. If any of your PDF documents have attachments, you can also include those attachments in the search. If you include a PDF index in your search, Acrobat searches indexed structure tags. To search an encrypted document, you must first open the document.

Printing PDF documents

Many of the options in the Acrobat Print dialog box are similar to those you'd find in the Print dialog boxes of other popular applications. For example, you can select a printer and set up parameters such as paper size and orientation. However, Acrobat also gives you the flexibility to print only the current view (that is, what is displayed on the screen at that moment), a selection, a specific page, selected pages, or a range of pages within the PDF file. You'll instruct Acrobat to print pages you select in the Page Thumbnails panel, a particular view, and discontiguous pages.

- In the Fall Hiking.pdf document, click the triangle on the left side of the window to open the navigation pane. Then click the Page Thumbnails button in the navigation pane.
- Click three thumbnails to select the pages you want to print. You can Ctrl-click (Windows) or Command-click (macOS) page thumbnails to select contiguous or discontiguous pages.



3 Choose File > Print. Select the name of the printer you want to print to. Because you selected pages in the Page Thumbnails panel, the Selected Pages option is selected automatically in the Print dialog box.

Printer: Office Laser Printer	~	Properties	Advanced	Help ?
Copies: 1		Print in graysca	ale (black and white)	
		Save ink/toner	0	
Pages to Print			Comments & Forms	
⊖ All			Document and Markups	~
O Current page			Summarize Comments	
* More Ontions			Scale: 63%	

Tip: In Windows, you can also access the Print dialog box by choosing Print from the context menu.

4 Click OK or Print to print your selected pages. Click Cancel if you don't want to print.

If you need help troubleshooting a printing issue, click the Help link in the upper right corner of the Print dialog box to go to the Adobe website for the latest printing tips and information.

- **5** After the pages print (or the Print dialog box closes, if you opted not to print), click an empty area of the Page Thumbnails panel to deselect all thumbnails, and then close the Page Thumbnails panel.
- **6** Go to page 3 of the document.
- **7** Zoom in to 200%, and then use the Hand tool (⊕) to shift the page so that you see the Jahn Ruck Pack.



8 Choose File > Print, and select the name of the printer you want to print to.

9 In the Pages To Print area, click More Options. Then select Current View. The preview changes to represent what is currently visible in the document pane. Click Fit in the Page Sizing & Handling area if it isn't already selected.



If you print with Current View selected, Acrobat prints only the contents of the document pane. However, you'll select pages to print instead.

- 10 In the Pages To Print area, select Pages.
- **11** In the Pages text box, type **1**, **3**-**4**. If you click OK or Print now, Acrobat will print pages 1, 3, and 4. You can enter any set of discontiguous pages or ranges of pages, using commas, in this text box.
- **12** If you want to print the pages you've selected, click Print or OK. If you don't want to print, click Cancel.
- **13** Choose File > Close to close the Fall Hiking.pdf document.

For information on printing comments, see Lesson 10, "Using Acrobat in a Review Cycle."

If your PDF file contains odd-sized pages, you can use the Size options in the Page Sizing & Handling area of the Print dialog box to reduce, enlarge, or divide pages. The Fit option scales each page to fit the printer page size; pages in the PDF file are magnified or reduced as necessary. The Poster options let you tile oversize pages, printing portions of them on several sheets of paper that can be assembled to reproduce the oversize image. In Windows, you can also specify that the paper source be determined by the document's page size.

Printing booklets

If your printer supports duplex printing, you can print a 2-up, saddle-stitched booklet from Acrobat. Booklets comprise multiple pages that are arranged so that they can be folded to present the correct page order. In a 2-up, saddle-stitched booklet, two side-by-side pages, printed on both sides, are folded once and fastened along the fold. The first and last pages print on the same sheet, the second and nextto-last pages print on the same sheet, and so on. When you collate, fold, and staple the double-sided pages, you create a single book with correct pagination.

To print a booklet from Acrobat:

- 1 Choose File > Print, and select your printer.
- 2 In the Pages To Print area, specify which pages to print.
- 3 In the Page Sizing & Handling area of the Print dialog box, click Booklet.

rint			3
Printer: Office Laser Jet Printer	 Properties 	Advanced	Help ()
Copies: 1	Print in graysc	ale (black and white)	
Pages to Print		Comments & For	ms
All		Document and M	farkups 🔍
O Current page		Summarize Cor	nments
O Pages 1 - 4		Souther con	in cons
O Selected pages Odd or Even Pages: All pages in range		11 + 0.5 last	
Page Sizing & Handling 🕕		11 x 8.5 Inc	nes
Size Poster Multiple	Booklet)	
Booklet subset: Both sides			FALL
Sheets from		40.40	MERIDIEN
		₽ ₩	CATALOS
Binding:		Tennin Tennin	and the second
Orientation:			
Portrait			
O Landscape			
Auto-rotate pages within each sheet			
		<	>
			Page 1 of 2 (1)
Dana Setun			Print Cancel
rade sember			Calicer

4 Choose additional page-handling options. You can auto-rotate pages, specify the first and last sheet to print, and select the binding edge. The Preview image changes as you specify options. For information about the options, see "Printing booklets" in Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Filling out PDF forms

PDF forms can be interactive or noninteractive. Interactive PDF forms (also called *fillable forms*) have built-in form fields and behave in much the same way as most forms that you encounter on the web or that are sent to you electronically. You enter data using the Selection tool or Hand tool in Acrobat or Acrobat Reader.

Noninteractive PDF forms (flat forms) are pages that have been scanned to create a facsimile of a form. These pages do not contain actual form fields; they contain only the images of form fields. Traditionally, you would print out these forms, fill them out by hand or using a typewriter, and then mail or fax the hard copy. With Acrobat, you can fill out these noninteractive or flat forms online using the Fill & Sign tool or the Add Text tool.

For information on creating and managing interactive forms, see Lesson 11, "Working with Forms in Acrobat."

You'll fill out fields in an interactive form, and then add information where there is no field using the Add Text tool.

 Choose File > Open, and navigate to the Lesson03/Assets folder. Select the Contact Update.pdf file, and click Open.

When it opens the document, Acrobat highlights the form fields.

- **2** Click in the Address field. Enter an address. The text appears in the font and type size chosen by the form creator.
- **3** Enter an email address and phone number.



The person who created this form forgot to create an interactive field for the name. You'll add text without requiring a field. ► Tip: You can fill out PDF forms on a tablet or phone using the Acrobat DC mobile apps. For more information, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices."

- **4** In the Tools pane, click the Edit PDF tool to open it. Then click Add Text in the Edit PDF toolbar.
- 5 Click next to the word *Name*. The pointer is an I-beam.
- 6 Type your name.



You can use the Add Text tool to add text to any PDF file, unless security settings applied to the document prohibit it. You can customize the text formatting using options in the Format area of the right-hand pane.

- **7** Close the Edit PDF tool.
- 8 Choose File > Save As, and save a copy of the form in the Lesson03/Finished_ Projects folder, naming the file Contact Update complete.pdf.

You can open the saved file if you wish to verify that all your data was saved.

9 Choose File > Close to close the form.

About flexibility, accessibility, and structure

The accessibility and flexibility of your Adobe PDF files determine how easily vision- and motion-impaired users and users of handheld devices can access, reflow, and—if you allow it—reuse the content of your files. You control the accessibility and flexibility of your Adobe PDF files through the amount of structure you build into the source file and the method you use to create the Adobe PDF file.

By making your PDF documents more accessible to users, you can broaden your readership and better meet government standards for accessibility. Accessibility in Acrobat falls into two categories:

- Accessibility features that help authors create accessible documents from new or existing PDF documents. These features include simple methods for checking accessibility and adding tags to PDF documents. With Acrobat Pro, you can also correct accessibility and reading-order problems in PDF files by editing the PDF file structure.
- Accessibility features that help readers who have motion or vision limitations to navigate and view PDF documents more easily. Many of these features can be adjusted by using a wizard, the Accessibility Setup Assistant.

For Adobe PDF files to be flexible and accessible, they must have structure. Adobe PDF files support three levels of structure—tagged, structured, and unstructured. Tagged PDF files have the most structure. Structured PDF files have some structure, but are not as flexible or accessible as tagged PDF files. Unstructured PDF files have no structure. (As you will see later in this lesson, you can add limited structure to unstructured files.) The more structure a file has, the more efficiently and reliably its content can be reused.

Structure is built into a document when, for example, its creator defines headers and columns, adds navigational aids such as bookmarks, and adds alternate text descriptions for graphics. In many cases, documents are automatically given logical structure and tags when they are converted to Adobe PDF.

When you create PDF documents from Microsoft Office files or from files created in later versions of Adobe FrameMaker[®], InDesign, or Adobe PageMaker[®], or when you create Adobe PDF files from websites, the resulting PDF files are tagged automatically.

In Acrobat Pro, if your PDF documents don't reflow well, you can correct most problems using the Accessibility panel or the TouchUp Reading Order tool. However, this is not as easy as creating a well-structured document in the first place. For an in-depth guide to creating accessible PDF documents, visit www.adobe.com/accessibility/products/acrobat.html.

Working with accessible documents

If you're working with Acrobat Pro, you'll examine a tagged PDF document. In either Acrobat Standard or Pro, you'll see how easy it is to reflow the document and extract content.

Checking for accessibility (Acrobat Pro only)

It's always a good idea to check the accessibility of any Adobe PDF document before you distribute it to users. The Accessibility Checker panel tells you if your document has the information necessary to make it accessible. At the same time, it checks for protection settings that would prohibit access. First, you'll look at the accessibility and flexibility of a tagged PDF file that was created from a Microsoft Word file.

- 1 Choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson03/Assets folder, and double-click the Tag_Wines.pdf file.
- 2 Choose File > Save As, and save the file as Tag_Wines1.pdf in the Lesson03/ Finished_Projects folder.
- **3** In the Tools pane, click the Accessibility tool. If the Accessibility tool isn't listed, click Tools in the main toolbar, and navigate to the Accessibility tool in the Protect & Standardize category. Then, choose Add Shortcut from the pop-up menu beneath the Accessibility tool, and click the Accessibility tool in the Tools pane.

Home	Tools	Tag_Wines1.p	odf			
Q Sea	rch tools					
	Protect	& Standardi	ze			^
	C)			P	
	Prote	ect	Redact	PDF Standards	Optimize PDF	
	4		(†)			
	Print Prod	luction	Accessibility			
	Add	-	Add 👻			

You'll use the Accessibility tool several times in this lesson, so it's handy to have it in the Tools pane. You can remove a tool from the Tools pane at any time by choosing Remove Shortcut from the menu beneath the tool in the Tools Center.

Accessibility options appear in the right-hand pane.

► Tip: By default, Acrobat displays only some of the tools in the Tools pane. To select which tools appear in the list, click Tools in the main toolbar, and then choose Add Shortcut or Remove Shortcut beneath each tool. **4** Click Full Check in the right-hand pane.

Autotagi I Autotagi I Araita Araita Antional Participation of the set of th	Close
Name Description Galaxies	nent 🗘
Pour Near Pour Near	LD
	eids 📮
Mazzer	Che
Satisficant East	<u>×le</u>
Restance in the parameterization and the metabolic state and metabolic state and Restations Provide and Provi	0
CRADADINGE • The indice white wais • Distribution with a wais affinite cities, will an indicate indicate and aging at indicate the indicate of th	0
SPARELEVE III http://www.internet.com/particle/access-stag/Parel/Sec.Classicsary.nd/ wccasards/Parel/Sec.	٢
	~

5 Accept the defaults in the Accessibility Checker Options dialog box, and click Start Checking.

	necker Options		
Report Opti	ons		
Create	accessibility report	Folder: C:\Users\Lisa Fridsma\Documents	Choose_
Attach	report to document		
Page Range			
All page	es in document	O Pages from 1 to 1	
Checking Op	ptions (31 of 32 in all	categories)	
Category:	Document		~
Docum	ent is not image-only	/ PDF	
Docum Docum Docum Text Ian Docum	ent is not image-only ent is tagged PDF ent structure provide iguage is specified ent title is showing in	y PDF s a logical reading order title bar	
Docum Docum Docum Text lan Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum	ent is not image-only ent is tagged PDF ent structure provide aguage is specified ent title is showing in arks are present in lar	y PDF s a logical reading order n title bar rge documents	
Docum	ent is not image-only ent is tagged PDF ent structure provide sguage is specified ent title is showing in arks are present in las ent has appropriate o	y PDF s a logical reading order n title bar rge documents color contrast	
Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Select	ent is not image-only ent is tagged PDF ent structure provide igguage is specified ent title is showing in arks are present in lar ent has appropriate of All Clear Al	y PDF s a logical reading order n title bar rge documents color contrast	
Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Docum Select Show this	ent is not image-only ent is tagged PDF ent structure provide sguage is specified ent title is showing in arks are present in lat ent has appropriate of All Clear Al dialog when the Che	r PDF s a logical reading order n title bar rge documents color contrast	

Acrobat quickly checks the document for accessibility issues and displays the interactive Accessibility Checker panel in the navigation pane. There are some issues with this document.

6 Expand the Document category. It lists three issues. Two of those issues are items that require you to look at the document to determine whether there's a problem (Logical Reading Order and Color Contrast). The third issue is the Title, which failed.



In an accessible document, the document title should be included and set to display automatically in the title bar. You can learn what each item in the Accessibility Checker panel refers to by choosing Explain from the options menu at the top of the panel.

7 Right-click or Control-click the Title item, and choose Fix.



The panel changes to show that the title passed, after Acrobat changed its settings. Had there not been a title already in the document, you'd have been prompted to enter the document title. You can quickly fix most accessibility issues in a document using the interactive Accessibility Checker panel.

8 Close the Accessibility Checker panel and the Accessibility tool.

You can add security to your PDF files and still make them accessible. The encryption offered by Acrobat DC prevents users from copying and pasting text from a PDF file, while still supporting assistive technology.

Reflowing a flexible PDF file (Standard and Pro)

Now you'll take a quick look at how flexible a tagged PDF file is. You'll reflow the PDF file so that you can easily read it at different screen widths.

First, you'll adjust the size of your document window to mimic the smaller screen of a handheld device.

- 1 Choose View > Zoom > Actual Size to display the document at 100%.
- 2 Resize the Acrobat window to about 50% of the full-screen display. In Windows, click the Maximize/Restore Down button if the window is currently maximized; if the window isn't maximized, drag a corner of the application window to reduce it. In macOS, resize the document pane by dragging a corner.

Your goal is to resize the Acrobat window so that the ends of the sentences in the document pane are cut off.

3 Choose View > Zoom > Reflow.

As of the beginning international wine cc Royal Easter Show i Trophy Wine as the Sauvignon Blane we the 2014 Internation Riesling dessert win and the entire compe Paris in November 2	of the year, Chamberg wines have gam mpetitions. The 2012 Sawignon blan A Luckland, New Zealand in March 20 best of 2012 Sawignon blane wines pr a the Top 100 Wines and Gold Medal a U Wine Competition in Napa, Californ won a Gold Medal and the Trophy for ition Trophy for Champion Wine of S 014 as the finest wine produced in Cali About The Wine	Awartos As of the beginning of the year, Chamberg Wines have gamered over 60 medals in national and international wine competitions. The 2012 Sawignon blane won a Gold Medal at the prestigious Royal Easter Show in Auxcland. New Zealand in March 2013 and additionally was awarded the Trophy Wine as the best of 2012 Sawignon blane wines produced in our county. The 2013 Sawignon blane won the Top 100 Wines and Gold Medal out of 1,720 entries from 21 countries at the 2014 International Wine Competition in Napa, California in December 2013. The 2013 Noble Riesling dessert wine won a Gold Medal and the Trophy for Champion Wine of Sweet and the entire competition Trophy for Champion Wine of
Name	Description	Show at the Air France Wine Awards in Paris in November 2014 as the finest wine produced in California as judged in that
PINOT NOIR	 Flagship wine of the Winery Terrain optimum for this delicat 	competition. About The Wines

The content of the document is reflowed to accommodate the smaller document screen, and you can now read an entire line of text without using the horizontal scroll bar.

When you reflow text, artifacts such as page numbers and page headers often drop out because they are no longer relevant to the page display. Text is reflowed one page at a time. You cannot save the document in the reflowed state. Now you'll examine how the display changes when you change the magnification.

- 4 Choose 400% from the magnification menu in the toolbar.
- 5 Scroll down the page to see how the text reflows. Again, because the text is reflowed, you don't have to use the horizontal scroll bar to move back and forth across the page to read the enlarged text. The text is automatically contained within the document pane.



6 When you've finished viewing the reflowed text, restore the Acrobat document window to its usual size, and close the file.

You can save the contents of a tagged document in a different file format for reuse in another application. For example, if you save this file as accessible text, you'll see that even the contents of the table are saved in an easy-to-use format.

With Acrobat, you can even make some unstructured documents more readily accessible to all types of users. You can add tags to a PDF document using the Add Tags To Document command in any version of Acrobat. However, to correct tagging and order errors, you must be using Acrobat Pro.

Making files flexible and accessible (Acrobat Pro only)

Some tagged Adobe PDF documents may not contain all the information necessary to make their contents fully flexible or accessible. For example, your file may not contain alternate text for figures, language properties for portions of the text that use a language other than the default language for the document, or expansion text for abbreviations. (Designating the appropriate language for different text elements ensures that the correct characters are used when you reuse the document for another purpose, that the word can be pronounced correctly when read out loud, and that the document will be spell-checked with the correct dictionary.)

• Note: You can add tags and alternate text using tools in the Accessibility panel in Acrobat Standard. If you're using Acrobat Pro, you can add alternate text and multiple languages using the Tags panel. (If only one language is required, it is easier to choose the language in the Document Properties dialog box.) You can also add alternate text using the TouchUp Reading Order tool.

Using the Make Accessible action

If you're using Acrobat Pro, you can systematically ensure your PDF document is accessible using the Make Accessible action. You'll use the action to set document properties, set the tab order, add tags, and add alternate text to the document.

The Make Accessible action is one of the default actions in the Action Wizard in Acrobat Pro. You'll learn more about using and creating actions in Lesson 12, "Using Actions."

First, you'll check the accessibility of a page of a user guide. This document was designed to be printed, so no attempt was made to make it accessible.

- 1 Choose File > Open, and open the AI_UGEx.pdf file in the Lesson03/ Assets folder.
- 2 Click the Accessibility tool in the Tools pane to open it.
- 3 Click Full Check, and click Start Checking.

The Accessibility Checker panel indicates that the document isn't tagged (in the Document category). You'll let Acrobat tag the document and add other accessibility features for you.

- 4 Close the Accessibility Checker panel.
- 5 Click Tools in the toolbar, and then click the Action Wizard tool in the Customize category.



6 Click Make Accessible in the Actions List pane.

The Actions List pane is replaced by the Make Accessible action pane, which lists the steps included in the action. The action automates steps when possible, and guides you through the steps you need to perform to make your document accessible.

- 7 Verify that the file in the Files To Be Processed box is AI_UGEx.pdf.
- 8 Click Start.

ACTIONS LIST	← Make Accessible
	Files to be processed:
Make Accessible	AI_UGEx.pdf
Archive Documents	Add Files
Publish Sensitive Inform	Start
Optimize for Web and M	1. Prepare
Optimize Scanned Docu	Set a title and ensure it displays in the window title bar.

The first section of the Make Accessible action helps you prepare your document settings for flexibility and accessibility.

9 In the Description dialog box, deselect Leave As Is in the Title area, change the title to **User Guide**, and click OK.

cription		
Title:	User Guide	
Subject:	Leave As Is	
Author:	Lisa Fridsma 🗹 Leave As Is	
Keywords:	Leave As Is	
	ок	Cancel

The title in the Description dialog box will appear in the title bar when the document is opened. After you click OK, Acrobat performs the next step automatically, setting the appropriate Open options for the document.

► Tip: The Recognition Report is a temporary file and can't be saved. The Full Check feature generates an accessibility report that you can save. **10** Accept the default settings in the Recognize Text - General Settings dialog box, and click OK.

These settings determine how OCR is applied to recognize text for screen readers.

11 When asked whether this document is intended to be a fillable form, click No, Skip This Step.

If you had clicked Yes, Acrobat would detect the form fields.

12 Click OK in the Set Reading Language dialog box to accept English as the reading language.

Acrobat automatically performs the next step, adding tags to the document.

13 Click OK when alerted that Acrobat will display any figures with missing alternate text.

Screen readers use alternate text (often called alt text) to describe non-text elements such as images or figures to a visually impaired person. Acrobat examines your document to ensure that every image has alternate text assigned to it, and prompts you to assign text where it's missing.

About tags

When you add tags to a document, Acrobat adds a logical tree structure to the document that determines the order in which page content is reflowed and read by screen readers and the Read Out Loud feature. If you're using Acrobat Pro, you can let Acrobat add tags automatically using the Make Accessible action. In either Acrobat Pro or Acrobat Standard, you can use the Autotag Document option in the Accessibility tool to assign tags, and then review the resulting Recognition Report to see how successful Acrobat was. On more complex pages—pages that contain irregularly shaped columns, bulleted lists, text that spans columns, and so on—Acrobat may mark areas that require some attention. Use the report to navigate to the problem areas of your PDF document by clicking the links for each error. Then, if you're using Acrobat Pro, click Reading Order in the Accessibility tool to correct the problem.

To see how Acrobat has tagged the document, click the Tags button to open the Tags panel in the navigation pane. (If the Tags button isn't displayed, choose View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Tags.) Click the arrow next to Tags to view the tags.

- **14** In the Set Alternate Text dialog box, type **Page Tool** as the alt text for the selected image. Then click Save & Close.
- **15** Click Start Checking in the Accessibility Checker Options dialog box to confirm that the document is now accessible.

	Q	Accessibility Checker	×
Set Alternate Text			
Image 1 of 1		 Document (2 issues) Accessibility permission fl 	ag - Pas
Save & Close Cancel	Ø	Image-only PDF - Passed Imaged PDF - Passed	

The Accessibility Checker panel now shows only two issues under the Document heading, both items that you would need to confirm manually.

16 Close the Accessibility Checker panel and the Action Wizard tool. Then close the AI_UGEx.pdf document.

Using Acrobat accessibility features (Standard and Pro)

Many people with vision and motor impairments use computers, and Acrobat provides a number of features that make it easier for them to work with PDF files. Such features include:

- Automatic scrolling
- Keyboard shortcuts
- Support for several screen-reader applications, including the text-to-speech engines built into Windows and macOS platforms
- Enhanced onscreen viewing

Using the Accessibility Setup Assistant

Both Acrobat DC and Acrobat Reader include an Accessibility Setup Assistant. In Windows, the Accessibility Setup Assistant launches automatically the first time the software detects a screen reader, screen magnifier, or other assistive technology on your system. In macOS, choose Edit > Accessibility Setup Assistant to open it. (You can also launch the Assistant manually at any time by selecting Setup Assistant in the Accessibility tool in Acrobat.) The Accessibility Setup Assistant walks you through setting the options that control how PDF documents appear onscreen. You can also use it to set the option that sends print output to a Braille printer.

A full explanation of the options you can set in the Accessibility Setup Assistant is available in Adobe Acrobat DC Help. The options available depend on the type of assistive technology you have on your system. The first panel of the Accessibility Setup Assistant requires you to identify the type of assistive technology you use:

- Select Set Options For Screen Readers if you use a device that reads text out loud or sends output to a Braille printer.
- Select Set Options For Screen Magnifiers if you use a device that makes text appear larger on the screen.
- Select Set All Accessibility Options if you use a combination of assistive devices.
- Click Use Recommended Settings And Skip Setup to use the settings Adobe recommends for users with limited accessibility. (Note that the preferred settings for users with assistive technology installed are not the same as the default Acrobat settings for users who are not using assistive technology.)

In addition to the options you can set using the Accessibility Setup Assistant, you can select a number of options in the Acrobat or Acrobat Reader preferences that control automatic scrolling, reading-out-loud settings, and reading order. You may want to use some of these options even if you don't have assistive technology on your system. For example, you can set your Multimedia preferences to show available descriptions for video and audio attachments.

If you opened the Accessibility Setup Assistant, click Cancel to exit the dialog box without making any changes.

About automatic scrolling

When you're reading a long document, the automatic scrolling feature saves you keystrokes and mouse actions. You can control the speed of scrolling, scroll backward and forward, and exit automatic scrolling with a single keystroke.

Now you'll test the automatic scroll feature.

- Choose File > Open, and open the Fall Hiking.pdf file. If necessary, resize the Acrobat window to fill your desktop.
- 2 Choose View > Page Display > Automatically Scroll.



- **3** You can set the rate of scrolling using the number keys on your keyboard. The higher the number, the faster the rate of scrolling. Try pressing 9, and then pressing 1, for example, to change the rate of scrolling. To exit automatic scrolling, press the Esc key.
- 4 Close the Fall Hiking.pdf file.

About keyboard shortcuts

For some common commands and tools, the keyboard shortcut is displayed next to the command or tool name. A list of keyboard shortcuts is available in Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

You can also use the keyboard to control Acrobat within a web browser. If the focus is on the web browser, any keyboard shortcuts you use act according to the web browser settings for navigation and selection. Pressing the Tab key shifts the focus from the browser to the Acrobat document and application, so navigation and command keystrokes function normally. Pressing Ctrl+Tab or Command+Tab shifts the focus from the document back to the web browser.

Modifying onscreen elements

You can smooth text, line art, and images to improve onscreen readability, especially with larger text sizes. If you use a laptop or if you have an LCD screen, you can also choose a Smooth Text option to optimize your display quality. Set the options to smooth text in the Page Display preferences. You can change the color of the background or text displayed on your monitor using the Accessibility Preferences in Acrobat. Color changes affect only the onscreen display, not the printed page or the saved PDF file.

You can increase the text size used in bookmark labels by choosing Text Size > Large from the options menu of the Bookmarks panel.

You may want to experiment with screen-display options and other accessibility controls to find a combination that best suits your needs.

Setting screen reader and reading-out-loud preferences

After you have installed your screen reader or similar application and set it up to work with Acrobat, you can set the screen reader preferences in Acrobat. You set these preferences in the same panel in which you set the Read Out Loud feature preferences that control the volume, pitch, and speed of the speech; the nature of the voice; and the reading order preferences.

Newer systems (both Windows and macOS) have built-in text-to-speech engines. Although the Read Out Loud feature can read the text of a PDF file out loud, it is not a screen reader. Not all systems support the Read Out Loud feature.

In this exercise, you'll look at the preferences that affect how Adobe PDF documents are read out loud. Unless you have text-to-speech software on your system, you do not need to set these preferences.

- 1 Choose File > Open, and open the Tag_Wines.pdf file.
- 2 If your system has text-to-speech software, choose View > Read Out Loud > Activate Read Out Loud.
- 3 After you have activated the Read Out Loud feature, choose View > Read Out Loud > Read This Page Only. Acrobat reads the page that is currently displayed. To stop the reading, press Ctrl+Shift+E (Windows) or Command+Shift+E (macOS).

You can experiment with the reading options.

4 Choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), and select Reading from the list on the left. Experiment, if you like.

You can control the volume, pitch, speed, and voice used.

If your system has limited memory, you may wish to reduce the number of pages Acrobat reads before data is delivered page by page. The default value is 50 pages.

5 Click OK in the Preferences dialog box to apply any changes that you make. Or click Cancel to exit the Preferences dialog box without making any changes.

- 6 To test the settings you changed, choose View > Read Out Loud > Read This Page Only.
- 7 To stop the reading, press Ctrl+Shift+E (Windows) or Command+Shift+E (macOS).

Sharing PDF files

You can share a PDF document with other people in many ways, including posting it on a website, copying it to a flash drive, or sending it as an email attachment. Acrobat makes it easy to distribute a PDF document to others by attaching the document to an email message or sharing a link to the document on Document Cloud.

1 With the Tag_Wines.pdf file open, click the Share Files button (☑) in the main toolbar. Acrobat displays options for sharing the document.

If you invite people to view or review the document, Acrobat uploads the document to Document Cloud and emails a link to the document. If you select Send As Attachment, Acrobat emails the PDF file as an attachment using your email account.

2 Click Send As Attachment, and then select either Default Email Application or Webmail. If you select Webmail, choose a webmail service from the pop-up menu, and then add the account.

Once you've added a webmail account, it appears in the pop-up list so you can select it directly.

- 3 Click Continue.
- **4** If you're using a webmail account, sign in, and grant access to Acrobat if prompted.

Your email application or webmail program opens with a blank message that has the file attached to it. If you're using Gmail, you may need to click Drafts to see the draft message.

- 5 Enter email addresses, a subject line, and a brief message.
- 6 Send the message.
- 7 Close the document, and close Acrobat.

Review questions

- 1 Name three methods you can use to navigate to a different page within a document in Acrobat DC.
- 2 Name two ways to change the view magnification in a PDF file.
- **3** How can you determine whether a PDF document is accessible when you're working with Acrobat Pro?
- **4** How can you print pages that are not next to each other (that is, discontiguous pages) from Acrobat?

Review answers

- 1 You can move to a different page by clicking the Previous Page or Next Page button in the main toolbar; dragging the scroll box in the scroll bar; entering a page number in the page box in the toolbar; or clicking a bookmark, page thumbnail, or link that jumps to a different page.
- 2 You can change the view magnification by choosing View > Zoom, and then choosing a view; dragging the Marquee Zoom tool; choosing a preset magnification in the toolbar; or entering a specific percentage in the magnification text box in the toolbar.
- **3** To determine whether a PDF file is accessible in Acrobat Pro, open the Accessibility tools, and then click Full Check.
- 4 To print discontiguous pages, either select the page thumbnails, and then choose File > Print, or, in the Print dialog box, select Pages, and then enter the page numbers or ranges you want to print, separated by commas.
4 ENHANCING PDF DOCUMENTS

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Rearrange pages in a PDF document.
- Rotate and delete pages.
- Insert pages into a PDF document.
- Edit links and bookmarks.
- Renumber pages in a PDF document.
- Learn how to insert video and other multimedia files.
- Set document properties and add metadata to a PDF.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.

MERIDIEN WI-FI

We move fast but take time to breathe. We embrace our environment and give back to it. We are a community with big ideas that need to be shared. We laugh, we work, we play. We are together and We are empowered.

Meridien. Now with WI-FI.

You can modify PDF documents by rearranging, cropping, deleting, or inserting pages; editing text or images; or adding multimedia files. You can also add navigational aids such as bookmarks and links.

LOCAL

Examining the work file

You'll work with conference materials for the fictitious Meridien Conference. The presentation has been designed both for print and for online viewing. Because this online presentation is in the developmental phase, it contains a number of mistakes. You'll use Acrobat to correct the problems in this PDF document.

- 1 Start Acrobat.
- 2 Choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson04/Assets folder, select Conference Guide.pdf, and click Open. Then choose File > Save As, click Choose A Different Folder, navigate to the Lesson04/Finished_Projects folder, rename the file Conference Guide_revised.pdf, and click Save.
- 3 Click the small arrow on the left side of the window to open the navigation pane, if it's not already open. Then click the Bookmarks button (□) in the navigation pane.



The Bookmarks panel opens, revealing several bookmarks that have already been created. Bookmarks are links to specific points in the document. They can be generated automatically from the table-of-contents entries of documents created by most desktop publishing programs or from formatted headings in applications such as Microsoft Word. You can also create bookmarks in Acrobat. You can specify the appearance of bookmarks and add actions to them. **4** Click along the edge of the Table of Contents page (away from the text), and then press the Down Arrow key on your keyboard to page through the document.

Notice that the bookmark icon corresponding to the page that you are viewing is subtly highlighted as you move through the pages. (There are a couple of bookmark errors that you'll correct later.)

- **5** Click the Table of contents bookmark to return to the first page of the presentation.
- **6** In the document pane, move the pointer over the items listed in the table of contents. Notice that the hand changes to a pointing finger, indicating that items in the list are links.
- 7 Click the Meridien Wi-fi entry in the document pane to follow its link. (Be sure to click the entry in the table of contents, not the bookmark in the Bookmarks panel.)



Notice that the page number on the page displayed in the document pane is 2, though the page number in the table of contents showed the page as being page 4. The page is out of order.

8 Choose View > Page Navigation > Previous View to return to the table of contents.

▶ Tip: The appearance of the Selection tool depends on where you move it over the page. Near editable text, it becomes an I-beam; over linked text, it becomes a pointing finger. At the edge of the page, it's an arrow with a box.

Moving pages with page thumbnails

Page thumbnails offer a convenient way to preview pages. In previous lessons, you used page thumbnails to navigate a document. Now you'll use them to quickly rearrange pages in a document.

1 Click the Page Thumbnails button (()) in the navigation pane.



The Meridien Wi-fi page is out of place. According to the table of contents, it should follow the page titled "What is the City of Meridien Conference?"

- 2 Click the page 2 thumbnail to select it.
- **3** Drag the selected thumbnail image down until the insertion bar appears between the thumbnails of pages 4 and 5.
- 4 Release the mouse button to insert the page at its new position.



The Meridien Wi-fi page now follows the "What is the City of Meridien Conference?" page and precedes the "Why participate?" page.

- 5 To check the sequence of pages, choose View > Page Navigation > First Page to go to the first page of the document (if you're not already there), and then use the Next Page button (()) to page through the presentation.
- 6 When you're satisfied that the pages are in the correct order, click the Page Thumbnails button again to close its panel. Then choose File > Save to save your work so far.

Manipulating pages

The first page of the presentation (page 1 of 13) is the Table of Contents page, and it's rather plain. To make the presentation more attractive, you'll add a cover page, which you'll then rotate to match the other pages in the presentation.

Inserting a page from another file

You'll start by inserting the cover page.

- 1 Click Organize Pages in the Tools pane.
- 2 Click Insert in the Organize Pages toolbar, and then choose From File.
- **3** Navigate to the Lesson04/Assets folder, and select Conference Guide Cover.pdf. Click Open or Select.
- **4** In the Insert Pages dialog box, choose Before from the Location menu, and select First in the Page area. Then click OK. You want to insert this PDF file before any of the pages in your document.



The cover document appears as page 1 in the Conference Guide_revised.pdf document.

▶ Tip: If you insert a page that is larger than the other pages in a document, you can crop out unnecessary areas of the page. Right-click the page, and choose Crop Pages.

Conference Anguler Guide	Table of Contents	Witcours to die Coy c/Moribio
1	2	3

5 Choose File > Save to save your work.

Rotating a page

The cover page is now in the conference document, but it has the wrong orientation. You'll rotate the new page to match the rest of the document.

- 1 Select the thumbnail for the cover. Two rotation icons, a delete icon, and an insert icon appear superimposed on the thumbnail.
- **2** Click the Rotate Counterclockwise icon.



Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, you can rotate and rearrange pages on a tablet or phone using the Acrobat DC mobile app. See Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices" to learn more.

Tip: If you have an

Acrobat rotates the page so that it matches the rest of the document. Only the selected page is rotated.

Deleting a page

The last page in the document doesn't quite fit with the others, and the conference committee has decided to distribute it separately. You'll delete it from the document.

- 1 Select the thumbnail for the last page in the document (page 14).
- **2** Click the delete icon.
- 3 Click OK to confirm that you want to delete the page.



The page is deleted from the Conference Guide_revised.pdf file.

4 Close the Organize Pages toolbar to return to the main document view.



5 Choose File > Save to save your work.

Renumbering pages

You may have noticed that the page numbers on the document pages do not always match the page numbers that appear below the page thumbnails and in the toolbar. Acrobat automatically numbers pages with Arabic numerals, starting with page 1 for the first page in the document, and so on. However, you can change the way Acrobat numbers pages. You'll give the cover page a roman numeral, so that the contents page is page 1.

- 1 Click the Page Thumbnails button (()) in the navigation pane to display thumbnails for the document's pages.
- 2 Click the page 1 thumbnail to go to the cover page.

You'll renumber the first page of the document—the cover page—using lowercase roman numerals.

3 Click the options menu button at the top of the Page Thumbnails panel, and choose Page Labels. The Page Numbering dialog box opens.



4 For Pages, select From, and enter from **1** to **1** of 13. For Numbering, select Begin New Section, choose "i, ii, iii" from the Style menu, and enter **1** in the Start text box. Click OK.

	@ <	Page Thumbnails × ⊡ • □ ⊨ ♀ ♀
	~	
	Ċ	MERIDIEN Conference
Page Numbering Pages All Selected From: 1 To: 1 of 13 Numbering		Continence August
Begin new section Style: [i, ii, iii,] Prefix: Start: 1 Extend numbering used in preceding section to selected pages		Table of Contants 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0 9 0
Sample: i, ii, iii, Cancel		1

5 Choose View > Page Navigation > Go To Page. Enter 1, and click OK.

	(2 of 13)
	Table of Contents
Go To Page	Welcome What in the Capy of Meridien Conference? Meridien Wi-6 Why participate? Conference highlights Previous Meridien Conference sponsor & event results Schedule at a glance Certral sessions City map To General information
Page: 1 of 13 Cancel OK	

Tip: You can manually add page numbers to the pages of your Adobe PDF document using headers or footers. (Select the Edit PDF tool, and choose Header & Footer > Add.) Acrobat displays the Table of Contents page. Because you renumbered the cover page, the number 1 in the page number text box is now assigned to the contents page of the document.

- **6** Close the Page Thumbnails panel.
- 7 Choose File > Save to save your changes.

Applying Bates numbering (Acrobat Pro only)

In law offices, Bates numbering is routinely applied to each page of a document that is part of a legal case or process. Using Acrobat DC Pro, you can automatically apply Bates numbering as a header or footer to any document or to documents in a PDF Portfolio. (If the PDF Portfolio contains non-PDF files, Acrobat converts the files to PDF and adds Bates numbering.) You can add custom prefixes and suffixes, as well as a date stamp. And you can specify that the numbering is always applied outside the text or image area on the document page.

To apply Bates numbering, click Organize Pages in the Tools pane, and then choose More > Bates Numbering > Add.



In the Bates Numbering dialog box, add the files you want to number, and arrange them in the appropriate order. Click Output Options to specify the location and naming convention for the numbered files. Click OK to close the Output Options dialog box. Then click OK in the Bates Numbering dialog box to open the Add Header and Footer dialog box, where you can define the style and format of the number—6 to 15 digits, plus prefixes and suffixes.

	Bates	s Numbering			
Add Files 🔻					
Add the files to be Bates numbe Arrange them in the order in wh	ered. ich you want	the Bates num	bers to appea	r.	
lame	Size	Created	Modified	Warnings/Errors	-
🔁 Conference Guide_Revised.pdf	2.00 MB	11/20/4 AM	11/20/6 AM		
🔁 GC_VendAgree.pdf	36.47 KB	11/6/114 PM	11/6/114 PM		
					_
Move Up (Move Down	Remove				
••••					
Help Output Options			0	K Cancel	
Help Output Options			0	K Cancel	
Help Output Options			0	K Cancel	
Help Output Options			0	K Cancel	
Help Output Options		Center Head	er Text	K Cancel	Right Header Text
Help Output Options		Center Head	Ler Text	K Cancel	Right Header Text
Help Output Options		Center Head	Ler Text	K Cancel	Right Header Text Right Footer Text

You can't edit Bates page numbering after it's applied, but you can delete it and start over.

For more information on applying Bates numbering and working with other legal features in Acrobat, see Adobe Acrobat DC Pro Help.

Managing links

► Tip: To quickly return to your previous view, choose View > Page Navigation > Previous View, or press Alt or Command and the Left Arrow key. Now you'll correct the broken links on the contents page and add a missing link.

- 1 Go to page 1, the Table of Contents page, if you're not there already.
- **2** Click the links for each of the table of contents entries to identify problems.

The link for page 3 and the second link for page 6 go to the wrong pages. There is no link for the last entry. First, you'll correct the links that go to the wrong pages.

- 3 Click Edit PDF in the Tools pane, and then choose Link > Add/Edit Web Or Document Link. Acrobat outlines the links on the page.
- 4 Double-click the link for page 3, "What is the City of Meridien Conference?"



5 In the Link Properties dialog box, click the Actions tab. The action associated with this link is to go to page 3. Click Edit.

	Appearance	Actions	
Add an Action			
Select Action:	Execute a m	enu item	0
			Add
Actions			
	page in this do	cument	
Page	: 3		
Zoor	n level: Fit Page		
	Down	Edit	Delete
ocked		Can	icel)

6 In the Go To A Page In This Document dialog box, select Use Page Number, and enter **3** in the Page box. Click OK.

d an Action lect Action:	Appearance Actions Execute a menu item
d an Action lect Action:	Execute a menu item
ect Action:	Execute a menu item
	Add
tions	
Go to a	page in this document
Page	B: 4
Zoor	m level: Fit Page
	ions Go to a Pag Zoo

The listed action now goes to page 4. Remember that you renumbered the pages, so page 3 is actually the 4th page in the PDF file.

- 7 Click OK.
- 8 In the toolbar, select the Selection tool. Then click the link for page 3. It goes to the appropriate page now. Return to the Table of Contents page.

Table of Contents	What is the City of Meridien Conference?
Welcome Working to the ridier Conference? What is the City of Meridier Conference? Working With With United States of Conference States	The Cry of Medicine Contents publication in Medicine Medi
9 City map 10 General information	No excelline cent. I made a los of non- consect and I plan to soc ele information I learned in my buitens. I cuiv suit for the new enterpresent

9 Follow steps 3–7 to make the same change for the link to the previous event results, changing the linked page number to page 6.

Now you'll create a link for the last entry.

- **10** Go to page 1 (the Table of Contents page), if you're not there already. If links aren't outlined, choose Link > Add/Edit Web Or Document Link.
- 11 Drag a link box around the final contents entry, "10 General information."
- **12** In the Create Link dialog box, choose Invisible Rectangle for the Link Type, and select Go To A Page View in the Link Action area. Then click Next.

	Create Link
	Link Appearance
6 Previous Meridien Confe	Link Type: Invisible Rectangle 💿 Line Style: Solid 🗢
7 Schedule at a glance	Highlight Style: Invert Color:
8 General sessions	Line Thickness: Thin
9 City map	Link Action
10 General information	O Go to a page view
	Open a file
I	Open a web page
	O Custom link
	Help Cancel Next

The Create Go To View dialog box appears. Don't click anything until you're on the page that should be linked.

13 Scroll to page 10. When the General Information page is on the screen, click Set Link. Acrobat returns you to the contents page.



- 14 Select the Selection tool, and then click the link you just created to test it.
- **15** Close the Edit PDF panel.
- **16** Choose File > Save to save your work.

Working with bookmarks

A bookmark is simply a link represented by text in the Bookmarks panel. While bookmarks that are created automatically by many authoring programs are generally linked to headings in the text or to figure captions, you can also add your own bookmarks in Acrobat to create a custom outline of a document or to open other documents.

Additionally, you can use electronic bookmarks as you would paper bookmarks to mark a place in a document that you want to highlight or return to later.

Adding a bookmark

First, you'll add a bookmark for the second topic on page 6, the section titled "Previous Meridien Conference sponsor and event results."

- 1 Go to page 6 in the document, so that you can see the event results.
- **2** Open the Bookmarks panel, and then click the Conference highlights bookmark. Your new bookmark will be added directly below the selected bookmark.
- Click the New Bookmark button () at the top of the Bookmarks panel.A new, untitled bookmark appears.



4 In the text box of the new bookmark, type **Previous conference results**. Press Enter or Return to accept the name.



Naming bookmarks automatically

You can create, name, and automatically link a bookmark by selecting text in the document pane.

- 1 Navigate to the page you want to link, and set the magnification to the optimal level. The current magnification will be inherited by the bookmark.
- 2 Drag the I-beam to highlight the text that you want to use as your bookmark.
- 3 Click the New Bookmark button at the top of the Bookmarks panel. A new bookmark is created in the bookmarks list, and the highlighted text from the document pane is used as the bookmark name. By default, the new bookmark links to the current page view displayed in the document window.



Changing a bookmark destination

A couple of bookmarks link to the wrong pages. You'll change those now.

1 In the Bookmarks panel, click the Why participate? bookmark. The document pane displays the "What is the City of Meridien Conference?" page.



- **2** Click the Next Page button (④) twice to go to page 5 (6 of 13) of the document, which is the page you want the bookmark to link to.
- **3** From the options menu at the top of the Bookmarks panel, choose Set Bookmark Destination. Click Yes in the confirmation message to update the bookmark destination.



- 4 Repeat the process to correct the destination of the "What is the City of Meridien Conference?" bookmark, which should be linked to page 3 (4 of 13).
- 5 Choose File > Save to save the Conference Guide_revised.pdf file.

Moving bookmarks

After creating a bookmark, you can easily drag it to its proper place in the Bookmarks panel. You can move individual bookmarks or groups of bookmarks up and down in the Bookmarks panel, and you can nest bookmarks.

Some of the bookmarks are out of order in the current document. You'll rearrange them now.

- 1 In the Bookmarks panel, drag the icon for the Welcome bookmark directly below the icon for the Table of contents bookmark.
- **2** Drag the other bookmarks so that they appear in the same order as the entries in the table of contents.



3 Close the Bookmarks panel, and then choose File > Save to save your work.

Setting document properties and metadata

You're nearly done with this conference guide. To finish it off, you'll set the initial view, which determines what people see when they first open the file, and add metadata to the document.

- 1 Choose File > Properties.
- 2 In the Document Properties dialog box, click the Initial View tab.
- 3 From the Navigation Tab menu, choose Bookmarks Panel And Page.

When the viewer opens the file, both the page and the bookmarks will be visible.

4 In the Window Options area, choose Document Title from the Show menu.

		[ocumen	t Properties		
	Description	Security	Fonts	Initial View	Custom	Advanced
Layout and	Magnification					
Navigation	tab: Bookm	arks Panel a	nd Page			
Page la	yout: Default			٢		
Magnifica	tion: Default			~		
Open to p	age: i		of 12 (13)		
Window Op	tions					
Resize w	vindow to initial	page				
🗌 Center v	vindow on scree	n				
Open in	Full Screen mod	ie				
Show: D	ocument Title	0				

With this option selected, the document title, rather than the filename, will appear in the document's title bar.

Adding multimedia files

With Acrobat, you can easily transform your PDF files into exciting multidimensional communication tools by inserting video, audio, and SWF animations.

When you add a multimedia file to a PDF, you can set launch behaviors and other options that determine how the file appears and plays in the PDF document. To add audio, video, or animation to a file, open the Add Rich Media tool, and select a tool from the toolbar to add video, sound, or a SWF file. Drag a box on the page for the content, select the multimedia file, and then specify the settings you want to use.



For more information on working with multimedia files in Acrobat DC, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

5 Select the Description tab.

The document's author has already entered some metadata for the file, including some keywords. Metadata is information about the document itself, and you can use it to search for documents. You'll add some more keywords.

6 In the Keywords field, after the existing keywords, type **; map; vendors**. Keywords must be separated by commas or semicolons.

	Description	Security	Fonts	Initial View	Custom	Advanced		
Description								
File:	Conference (uide_Revise	d.pdf					
Title:	Meridien Cor	Meridien Conference Attendee Guide						
Author:	Local							
Subject:	Guide to the	Meridien Co	onference	for our esteem	ned attended	es		
Keywords:	; meridien; c	onference; g	guide; loca	al; schedule; m	ap; vendors			

- 7 Click OK to accept changes in the Document Properties dialog box. Notice that the document title is displayed now, instead of the filename.
- 8 Choose File > Save to save your work, and then close all open files and quit Acrobat.

Setting up presentations

Generally, when you make a presentation to a group of people, you want the document to take over the entire screen, hiding distractions such as the menu bar, toolbars, and other window controls.

You can set up any PDF file to display in Full Screen mode in the Initial View tab of the Document Properties dialog box. In the Full Screen tab of the Preferences dialog box, you can set a variety of transition effects to play as you move between pages. You can even set the speed at which pages advance. You can also convert presentations that you've prepared in other programs, such as PowerPoint, to Adobe PDF, preserving many of the authoring program's special effects. For more information, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Review questions

- 1 How can you change the order of pages in a PDF document?
- 2 How do you insert an entire PDF file into another PDF file?
- 3 How can you correct a link's destination?
- 4 What is a bookmark?

Review answers

- 1 You can change the page order by dragging the page thumbnails corresponding to the pages you want to move to their new locations in the Page Thumbnails panel.
- 2 To insert all the pages from a PDF file before or after any page in another PDF file, select the Organize Pages tool, choose Insert > From File, and then select the file you want to insert. Specify where in the document the pages should be inserted.
- 3 To correct a link's destination, select the Edit PDF tool, and then choose Link > Add/ Edit Web Or Document Link. Next, double-click the incorrect link. Then click the Actions tab in the Link Properties dialog box, click Edit, and type the correct page number in the Page box in the Go To A Page In This Document dialog box. Click OK to close each dialog box.
- 4 A bookmark is simply a link represented by text in the Bookmarks panel.

5 EDITING CONTENT IN PDF FILES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Edit text in a PDF document.
- Add text to a PDF file.
- Add and replace images in a PDF file.
- Edit images in a PDF document.
- Copy text and images from a PDF document.
- Export PDF content to a Word, Excel, or PowerPoint document.
- Learn about redacting content.



This lesson will take approximately an hour to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



With Acrobat DC, you can edit text and other PDF content smoothly and easily. You can also repurpose text, data, and images by copying or exporting content to another application.

Editing text

► Tip: As you can see, it's easy to make changes to a PDF document. If you want to ensure that your PDF file remains as you intended, apply security settings. For more on security, see Lesson 9, "Adding Signatures and Security."

• Note: Acrobat automatically enables Touch Mode when it senses a touch screen on the device you're using. In Acrobat DC, you can easily make simple and not-so-simple edits to text in PDF documents, as long as security settings permit it. Whether you're correcting typos, adding punctuation, or restructuring entire paragraphs, Acrobat reflows the text appropriately. You can even use the find-and-replace feature to correct or update multiple instances of a word or phrase in the PDF file. In addition to changes to content, you can edit text attributes such as spacing, point size, and color. If you attempt to change text in a font that is not available on your system, Acrobat prompts you to select a substitute font, and then remembers the substitution later.

Editing a single text block

You'll start by deleting unnecessary text in a document, and then you'll edit a paragraph to make it parallel with other bullet points.

1 Start Acrobat, and choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson05/Assets folder, and double-click the Globalcorp_facilities.pdf file.

The Globalcorp_facilities.pdf file is an 18-page document that describes the responsibilities of a department at a fictitious company.

2 Go to page 3 in the document.

The document includes several sections, each with a headline such as "Office Services." Only page 3 includes a subhead ("Things to consider"). You'll delete the text so that it's consistent with the other section pages.

3 Click Edit PDF in the Tools pane.

By default, when you open the Edit PDF tool, Edit is selected in the Edit PDF toolbar, so bounding boxes appear around text blocks and images that are editable. If Acrobat is in Touch Mode, an additional handle appears at the top, as shown here.

4 Click the "Things to consider" bounding box to select it, and then press the Delete key to remove it.



5 Go to page 11, which includes bullet points about furniture.

You'll change the second bullet point to start with a verb, making it parallel with all the other bullet points in the document.

- 6 Select "Purchases of new furniture need prior approval by."
- 7 Type Obtain approval from.
- 8 Click an insertion point after "Corporate," and type before purchasing furniture.



As you delete, replace, or add text, Acrobat reflows the paragraph.

9 Choose File > Save As, and save the file as Globalcorp_facilities_edited.pdf in the Lesson05/Finished_Projects folder.

Changing bullet and number list properties

Acrobat recognizes bulleted and numbered lists and provides you with bullet and number options.

1 Click in the text block that includes the bulleted text.



• Note: If you're unable to select text in a PDF file, the text may be part of an image. You can convert image text to editable text by using the Recognize Text panel. For more information about text recognition, see Lesson 2, "Creating Adobe PDF files." **2** Choose the 1.2.3. option from the number list menu in the right-hand pane.



The bulleted list becomes a numbered list, but these items shouldn't be numbered.

3 Select the check mark option from the bullet menu in the right-hand pane.



Both bullets become check marks.



6 Click Next to locate the next occurrence, which is on the same page.

all the instances of the word. Click OK to close the dialog box.

7 Click Replace, and then click Next again. Acrobat reports that it has found

- 5 Find Interface **Office Equipment** Monitor the use of office printers and copiers **Replace with** Communicate with local providers to service Communicate equipment and make repairs Refer to Purchasing Website Replace if new equipment is needed
- Click Replace in the Find panel to replace the word.
- Find Interface **Office Equipment** Monitor the use of office printers and copiers **Replace with** Interface with local providers to service equipment and Communicate make repairs **Refer to Purchasing Website** if new equipment is needed
- **3** Type **Communicate** in the Replace With box.

face" with the word "communicate" throughout the document.

2 In the Find panel, type **Interface** in the Find box, and then click Replace With to expand the panel.

Acrobat DC includes a find-and-replace feature similar to one you might use in a word processing or page layout application. You'll use it to replace the word "inter-

- 4 Click Next in the Find panel. Acrobat highlights the next occurrence of the word "interface," on page 10.

Replacing multiple occurrences of text

1 Choose Edit > Find.

8 Close the Find panel.

ADOBE ACROBAT DC CLASSROOM IN A BOOK, THIRD EDITION 125

Tip: The Find feature is not case-sensitive.

Changing text properties

You can change the font, size, type style, alignment, and other attributes of text without leaving Acrobat.

- 1 Go to page 2, and select the word "Agenda."
- **2** In the Format area of the right-hand pane, click the color swatch, and select a new color. We used magenta. In macOS, close the Colors panel.
- 3 With the word "Agenda" still selected, click the Bold icon in the Format area.

Office Services New Employees	Linda White, WW Facilities Manager, GlobalCorp	FORMAT	
Health and Safety	T. Blue, Security Officer,	Myriad Pro	*
Quin	Giobacorp	31.98 🗸 🔲	
	AL	ΤΤΤ	$T^1 T_1$

4 Save your changes so far.

Adding text

You can add entirely new text, including new bullet points. You'll add a bullet point to page 11.

- 1 Go to page 11.
- **2** Click an insertion point after the period in the second bullet item, and press Enter or Return.

Acrobat creates a new bullet and insertion point indented to match the previous bulleted items.

- Tip: With the bounding box selected, you can resize items or move them anywhere on the page.
- **3** Type **Evaluate ergonomic needs and identify solutions**.



The formatting of the new bullet item matches the previous items.

4 Go to page 18.

You'll add text to this page.

5 Select the bounding box that contains the words "Thank you!," and drag it closer to the top of the blue horizontal stripe.

Thank your	a Thank you b
globalcorp	globalcorp

- 6 Click Add Text in the Edit PDF toolbar.
- 7 Click a text insertion point directly below the "T" in "Thank you," and type We look forward to working with you!

The text appears with the formatting options that are currently selected in the righthand pane. It matches the existing text on the page.

8 Select the text you just typed, and reduce the font size to 22. If necessary, move the text box to reposition it.



9 Save your work so far.

Redacting text (Acrobat Pro only)

When courts make documents public or companies are required to produce documents that contain potentially confidential or privileged information, such information is often redacted, or hidden. In Acrobat Pro, you can use the Redact tool to automatically search for and permanently remove any privileged information. The Redact tool is in the Protect & Standardize category in the Tools Center.



You can search for specific terms, such as names, telephone numbers, or account numbers; you can also search for common patterns. You can redact information using the simple equivalent of a black marker, or add overlay text that identifies the privilege asserted, applicable statutory or code citation, or other basis for the redaction.

Redact	P Ma	rk for Redaction 👻 🔏 Apply	Do Pr	operties	Remove Hid	dden Information	Sanitize Document
¢	Form 1040 Department of the Treasury - Internal Revenue Service (99) IRS Use Only					- Do not write or staple in this space.	
2							OMB No. 1545-0074
	Label	Your first name	MI	Last name			Your social security number
0	(See instructions.)	John	X	Smith			Redacted
9		If a joint return, spouse's first name	MI	Last name			Spouse's social security number
	Use the IBS label.	Mary	1244	Smith			Redacted
	Otherwise, please print or type.	Home address (number and street). If you have a P.O. box, see instructions. Apartment 12345 Easy Street			Apartment no.	You must enter your social security	
		City, town or post office. If you have a foreign address, see instructions.			S	tate ZIP code	A number(s) above.
	Presidential Anytown XX 12345				X 12345	Checking a box below will not change your tax or refund.	

For information about using the Redact tool, see Adobe Acrobat Pro DC Help.

Working with images in a PDF file

In Acrobat DC, you can make simple changes to the position or size of an image in a PDF file, add images, or replace images. To make more substantial edits to an image, you can open it in an image-editing application such as Adobe Photoshop, and save it so that Acrobat updates the image in the PDF file.

Replacing images

It's easy to replace an image in a PDF file in Acrobat DC. You'll replace the image on page 4.

- 1 Go to page 4 in the Globalcorp_facilities_edited.pdf file.
- 2 Select Edit in the Edit PDF toolbar.
- **3** Right-click (Windows) or Control-click (macOS) the image of the cubicle, and choose Replace Image. Alternatively, you can select the image, and then click the Replace Image icon in the Objects area of the right-hand pane.
- **4** In the Open dialog box, navigate to the Lesson05/Assets folder, select the New_Reception.jpg file, and click Open.





Acrobat replaces the original image with the one you selected.

• Note: A replacement image may not be the same size as the original image. You may want to adjust the dimensions or aspect ratio of an image before using it in your PDF document.

Adding images

You can also add images to a PDF file. You'll add one to the page that describes mail services.

- 1 Go to page 5.
- 2 Select Add Image in the Edit PDF toolbar.
- **3** In the Open dialog box, navigate to the Lesson05/Assets folder, select the Boxes.jpg file, and click Open.

A thumbnail of the image is attached to the cursor.

4 Click on the right side of the page to place the image. Its upper left corner is aligned with the cursor's position at the time you clicked. You can drag the image to a different position.



Editing an image in Acrobat

Acrobat is not an image-editing application, but you can make some simple changes to your images without leaving Acrobat. You can rotate, flip, or crop an image in a PDF file.

- 1 On page 5, select the image of people with boxes.
- 2 Click the Crop icon (口,) in the Objects area of the right-hand pane. The image handles change to look like old-fashioned photo corners.



- **3** Drag the lower right corner up to crop out much of the extra floor and the people to the right of the railing.
- 4 Drag the upper left corner down to the right, cropping out the people on the far left. The image should clearly focus on the three people in the center now. You can adjust the crop at the top of the image if you want to, or reposition it on either side.
- 5 Click the Crop icon again to deselect it. If you want to, you can drag the image to reposition it on the page and drag a corner handle to resize it so that it is more aesthetically pleasing.







6 Save the PDF file.

Editing an image in another application

If you want to lighten or darken an image, change its resolution, apply filters, or otherwise make substantive edits to it, you can edit it in an image-editing application. In this exercise, you'll make changes to the background image.

- 1 Select Edit in the Edit PDF toolbar, if it's not already selected.
- 2 Still on page 5, select the background image for the entire page.
- **3** Choose an application from the Edit Using menu in the Objects area of the right-hand pane.



Acrobat lists image-editing applications, such as Adobe Photoshop or Microsoft Paint, that are installed on your system. How extensively you can edit the image depends on the application you open it with.

- **4** Make changes to the image. For example, you can draw a red box or something equally obvious. Or, you can make a change that fits within the context of the document. Then save or close the image, depending on the application.
- 5 Return to Acrobat.

The changes you made appear on the page and will be saved with the PDF file. However, the original image is unchanged.

6 Close the Edit PDF tool and return to Document mode.

Copying text and images from a PDF file

► Tip: You can change the security settings to prevent people from copying text or images from your PDF file. See Lesson 9, "Adding Signatures and Security." Even if you no longer have access to the source file for a PDF document, you can reuse the text and images in other applications. For example, you might want to add some of the text or images to a web page. You can copy the text out of the PDF file in rich text format (RTF) or as accessible text so you can import it into a different authoring application for reuse. You can save images from the file in JPEG, TIF, or PNG format.

If you want to reuse only small amounts of text or one or two images, copy them to the clipboard or to an image format file using the Selection tool. (If the Copy, Cut, and Paste commands are unavailable, the creator of the PDF may have set restrictions on editing the content of the document.)

You'll copy the text from a page in the facilities document for reuse.

- 1 Go to page 17.
- **2** Select the Selection tool (\mathbf{k}) in the toolbar.
- **3** Move the pointer over the text on the page. Notice that the pointer changes to an I-beam when it is in text-selection mode.
- **4** Drag the Selection tool across all the text on the page.

5 Right-click or Control-click the text, and choose Copy With Formatting, which preserves the layout.



• Note: Make sure you closed the Edit PDF tool. If you select text with the Edit option selected, you'll see different options in the context menu.

6 Minimize the Acrobat window, open a new or existing document in an authoring application such as a text editor or Microsoft Word, and then choose Edit > Paste.



Tip: You can also copy text and images from all or part of a page using the Snapshot feature. Choose Edit > Take A Snapshot, select the area you want to copy, click OK to close the message box, and then paste the image into another application. The resulting image is in bitmap format; any text copied this way is not editable.
Your text is copied into the document in your authoring application. Acrobat attempts to retain most of the formatting from the PDF file. But as you can see here, in most cases, you'll need to edit and format the text at least a little bit. If a font copied from a PDF document is not available on the system displaying the copied text, Acrobat substitutes the font.

You can save individual images for use in another application.

- **7** Go to page 4 in the document, and select the image.
- 8 Right-click (Windows) or Control-click (macOS) the image, and choose Save Image As.

The reception staff reporting to facilities management are responsible for answering incoming calls and directing all calls to the anononide staff member Visitors to	
the office building through the reception area must be greeted and signed-in promptly. The GlobalCorp In/Out staff whereabouts system should be maintained, updated and strictly adhered to.	Copy Image Copy With <u>F</u> ormatting
If questions or issues arise, reception staff can contact their managers or security personnel.	Save Image As
globalcorp	Add Book <u>m</u> ark
	Edit Image
	Cre <u>a</u> te Link
	Image Properties

- **9** In the Save Image As dialog box, name the image **Reception Copy**, and choose JPEG Image Files from the Save As Type (Windows) or Format (macOS) menu. Save the file in the Lesson05/Finished_Projects folder.
- **10** Close any open documents in other applications, but leave the Globalcorp_facilities_edited.pdf file open in Acrobat.

You've copied text from a PDF document, and you've saved an image for reuse. You can also select both images and text, copy them, and paste them into another application.

Exporting PDF content to a PowerPoint presentation

In Acrobat DC, you can export a PDF file as a Microsoft PowerPoint presentation. Each page of the PDF document becomes a fully editable slide in PowerPoint, retaining formatting and layout as much as possible.

You can specify whether to include comments and whether to run OCR to recognize text when you save as a PowerPoint presentation. To change the settings, choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), select Convert From PDF from the list on the left, select PowerPoint Presentation from the Converting From PDF list, and then click Edit Settings.

You'll export the facilities document to a PowerPoint presentation.

1 With the Globalcorp_facilities_edited.pdf file open, open the Tools Center, and click Export PDF.



► Tip: If you have an Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, you can export PDF files to Word, PowerPoint, or Excel on a tablet or phone using the Acrobat DC mobile app. To learn more, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices." 2 Select Microsoft PowerPoint for the format, and then click Export.



- 3 In the Save As dialog box, select the Lesson05/Finished_Projects folder.
- 4 Click Save in the Save As dialog box.
- **5** Preview the presentation in PowerPoint, if it's installed. If you do not have PowerPoint installed, you may be able to preview the presentation using the Preview application in macOS.



Some text and images may have shifted. When you export a PDF file to a PowerPoint presentation, evaluate each slide carefully, and make any necessary adjustments in PowerPoint.

6 Close the Globalcorp_facilities_edited.pdf file and PowerPoint or any other applications that are open. Leave Acrobat open.

Saving PDF files as Word documents

You can save PDF files as Word documents (either .docx or .doc files), no matter what application the document originated in. You'll save a statement of work for a fictitious company as a Word document.

- 1 In Acrobat, choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson05/Assets folder, and select the Statement_of_Work.pdf file. Click Open.
- 2 Choose File > Export To > Microsoft Word > Word Document. (If you're using Word 2003 or earlier, choose Word 97-2003 Document, which saves a .doc file.)
- **3** In the Save As dialog box, change the file destination to the Lesson05/Finished_ Projects folder. Then click Settings.
- **4** In the Save As DOC Settings or Save As DOCX Settings dialog box, select Retain Page Layout. Make sure the other options are all selected. Then click OK.

[custom]	Save As DOCX Settings ×
SOLUTIONS	Layout Settings
Statement of Work	Retain Flowing Text Retain Page Layout
Presented to GlobalCorp for	Comments Settings
Project management services	Image Settings
	Text Recognition Settings
June 12, 2017	Recognize text if needed Set Language
and an initialized as all to expendent significantly protocols in an initial	OK Restore Defaults Cancel

5 Click Save to save the file.

Acrobat displays the status of the conversion process as it works. When you save complex PDF documents, the conversion to Word may take longer. If View Result was selected in the Save As PDF dialog box, the document automatically opens in Word or a similar application.

► Tip: You can save PDF files as PowerPoint presentations, Word documents, or Excel spreadsheets by choosing an option in the Export PDF tool, choosing File > Export To > [format], or choosing an option from the Save As Type or Format menu in the Save As PDF dialog box.

- 6 Open the Statement_of_Work.doc or Statement_of_Work.docx file in Word, if it's not already open. You may also be able to open the document in Preview or Pages in macOS, or in another application that can open .doc or .docx files.
- **7** Scroll through the document to confirm that the text and images have been saved appropriately.



In most cases, Acrobat saves PDF files as Word documents with impressive integrity. However, depending on the way the document was created, you may need to adjust spacing or make minor corrections. Always carefully review a document in Word after you've saved it from Acrobat.

8 Close the PDF file in Acrobat, and then quit Word or any other applications.

Extracting PDF tables as Excel spreadsheets

You can export an entire PDF file or selected tables as Excel worksheets. You'll export a list of restaurants from a PDF document to a new Excel file.

1 In Acrobat, choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson05/Assets folder, and select Venues.pdf. Click Open.

The PDF document includes a table of restaurants in the fictitious city of Meridien. You'll export that table to an Excel file.

- **2** Drag from the upper left corner of the table to the lower right corner, so that the entire table is selected.
- 3 Right-click or Control-click the selected table, and choose Export Selection As.



4 In the Export Selection As dialog box, choose Excel Workbook from the Save As Type or Format menu. Name the file Venues.xlsx, and save it in the Lesson05/ Finished_Projects folder. Then click Save.

File name:	Venues			
Save as type:	Excel Workbook (*.xlsx)			
	Settings	View Result		
∧ Hide Folders			Save	Cancel

Acrobat reports its progress. If View Result was selected in the Export Selection As dialog box, your new spreadsheet opens in Excel or another application automatically.

5 Open the Venues.xlsx file, if it isn't already open. You may also be able to open the file in Preview in macOS or in other applications that can open Excel documents.

	e 🖸 0ff) 🖷	ه . د	- & -		Venu	ies - Ex	cel		Lisa		æ			
File	Home Insert	Draw	Page La	iyout Fe	ormulas	Data	Re	view V	/iew H	lelp A	robat	РTe	II me	ß
Paste	Minion Pro → B I U → → ☆ → Font	11.5 - A A A	Alignr	ab c ≡ ⊡ + ≫ + nent 5	Genera \$ - 9 00 -00 Numbe	1 • 6 •	For Col	nditional mat as Ta I Styles - Style	Formattir ble • s	ng - 🏭	nsert ÷ Delete ÷ Format÷ Cells	Σ - 	Ar + P + ting	~
A1	- : ×	~	fx N	Jame									2	~
Mane	Address		C	Website		E	Price	Hours	H	Restictions	Comments	_		
1	Tras Councils Dates		100 ST ST45	- Contra		Curregory		1000.0000	000	HEARCHORE	Contraction of the second			
2	STOD Oceanic Drive		430 03 0303	garysgartind		Papanese		1200-0000	200		P OF GIODE WI	io iove giliger	, opnoto seci	ras bargi
Acque e Farine	3663 Garden Circle		490 32 3880	acquaefarina.me		Italian	22	1100 - 2300	300		Voted Best I	talian Restau	rant this side o	of the Tilb
Colory	243 West Stalk Road	3	490 52 4798	celery.mer		Vegeterian	\$\$	1100 - 0000	270		Offers a cele	ry tasting mer	w; celery topp	ed ice cr
Gabeland Loffel	3220 Gleniyon Bould	mard	490 46 8997	gabeandloffel.m	er	Café	555	1200 - 0000	200	18+	Octoberfest polka music (in Meridien w an be loud ar	ith steins of t ad obnoxious	se best b at times
3 Happy Fish	1252 Alabaster Road		490 27 9435	happyfich.mer		Japanese	\$\$	1700 - 0100	300	BYOB	Suchi and co	hini; nuch fo	od make very	happy cu
* Il Piatto di Pasta	3350 Villa Road		430 32 3880	ilpistto.mer		Italian	\$	1700 - 0200	240		Family friend	ly; ull-you-car	reat pasta for	r kida; ate
7. La Rore	235 Bodeaux Lane		430 48 5532	lareve.mer		French	\$\$\$	1700 - 0600	30	21+	Dising room:	are bedroon	ns; not approp	oriate for
8 Zake Wallaby	375 Sunset Drive		430 22 3874	lakewallaby.mer	-	Café	\$	1700 - 0100	130	18+	100% authent	ic Australian I	barbecue; stuf	fed kang
4	017311 - 0.10						2				away			
10	2.01 West and street		430 30 3022	aprownsprouts.	iler	regetellali	***	100-2300	100		vegah ohiji n	rears, conside	area overprice	0
Meridien Grill	2157 Misty Pine Aver	rec.	490 22 7651	meridiengrill.met		Café	55	0900 - 2100	300		There is no g good during	rill, there is no winter seasor	o kitchen, ever N	ything is
		2.2	100 21 3301	100				1000 0000			Great views o	of the city fro a boths on the	m the hilltop; p e was to the re	parking is 🚽
a k	Table 1	+						1						•
Ready										1 🗉		-1	+	40%

Acrobat appropriately converted the fields in the table.

6 Close any open documents, Acrobat, and other applications.

Review questions

- 1 How do you edit text in a PDF file?
- 2 How can you prevent others from editing or reusing content in a PDF file?
- 3 What kinds of edits can you make to an image in Acrobat?
- **4** How can you export a PDF file to Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, or Microsoft PowerPoint format?
- 5 How do you copy text from a PDF file?

Review answers

- 1 To edit text in a PDF file, select Edit PDF in the Tools pane, make sure Edit is selected in the Edit PDF toolbar, and then make your edits. Acrobat reflows the text as you change it.
- **2** To prevent others from editing or reusing the content of your PDF file, apply security to the document.
- **3** You can rotate, flip, crop, resize, or replace an image in Acrobat.
- **4** To export a PDF file to Word, Excel, or PowerPoint format, do one of the following:
 - Choose an option from the Export PDF tool.
 - Choose File > Export To > [format].
 - Choose an option from the Save As Type or Format menu in the Save As PDF dialog box.
- **5** If you're copying a couple of words or sentences, right-click or Control-click the selected text, and choose Copy With Formatting to retain the formatting when you paste the text.

6 USING ACROBAT ON MOBILE DEVICES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Learn how to access and download Acrobat apps.
- Comment on PDFs in the Acrobat Reader app.
- Work with PDF files in Document Cloud.
- Edit PDF files in the Acrobat Reader app (tablet only).
- Use the Fill & Sign app to complete a form on a mobile device.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



Celebrate the harvest!

People Feeding People produced a bumper crop this year — and not just vegetables. We fed more hungry families, educated more youth about nutrition, trained more gardeners, and hosted more community dinners than ever before.

And it's all because of supporters like you.

Join us to celebrate all that we've accomplished and to look forward to the year ahead.

People Feeding People's Annual Harvest Celebration Saturday, October 19 Little Red Schoolhouse 1414 Main Street

Many of the tools you use to work with PDF files in Acrobat on the desktop are also available on Document Cloud and in the Acrobat mobile apps, so you can keep working wherever you are.

About the Acrobat mobile apps

Adobe Document Cloud and its family of mobile apps let you work on PDF files from anywhere. Many of the features of Acrobat for desktop are available when you access Document Cloud on a web browser or use the Adobe Acrobat Reader app, the Adobe Fill & Sign app, and the Adobe Sign app. The Adobe Scan app extends the power of Acrobat so that you can scan a document using the camera on your mobile device.

The user interfaces on the apps are slightly different in iOS and Android.

Adobe Document Cloud - Adobe Document Cloud includes Adobe Acrobat DC, as well as the mobile apps, the Acrobat interface on your browser, and cloud storage space. You can use Document Cloud online to work with your documents from any computer or device that has Internet access. To access Document Cloud in a browser, visit documentcloud.adobe.com, and then sign in with your Adobe ID.

Adobe Acrobat Reader app - The free Acrobat Reader app lets you view, organize, export, print, and comment on PDF files on mobile devices. On an iPad or Android tablet, you can also use the app to edit PDF files.

Adobe Fill & Sign app - You can use the Fill & Sign app on a mobile device just as you use the Fill & Sign tool in Acrobat DC. Open or take a picture of a form, and then complete it, sign it, and then submit it.

Adobe Sign app - This straightforward but powerful app lets you send documents for electronic signature through the Adobe Sign service, sign documents yourself, and track documents. You can also set up a form to get a signature in person.

Adobe Scan app - Your mobile phone or tablet becomes your scanner, instantly converting physical documents into PDFs. You can crop or rotate the document in Adobe Scan, or make other changes in Acrobat Reader or Acrobat DC.

Download any of the apps from the App Store (iOS) or Google Play (Android). The apps are all free; to take full advantage of the features available with your Document Cloud or Creative Cloud subscription, sign in using your Adobe ID.

Getting Started

In this lesson, you'll work with PDF documents in apps and in your browser. First, you'll upload the documents to Document Cloud so they're available to you in the apps.

1 Download and install the Adobe Acrobat Reader, Adobe Fill & Sign, and Adobe Scan apps onto your mobile device(s) if you haven't already. You can access the apps in the App Store (iOS) or Google Play (Android).



- 2 In Acrobat DC, choose File > Open, and navigate to the Lesson06/Assets folder.
- 3 Shift-select Postcard.pdf and Tickets.pdf, and click Open.
- 4 With Postcard.pdf active, choose File > Save As, and navigate to the Lesson06/ Finished_Projects folder. Name the file Postcard_final.pdf, and click Save.
- **5** Click the Upload To Document Cloud button in the toolbar.

		(B
--	--	----------	---

- 6 Select the Tickets.pdf tab to make the PDF file active.
- 7 Choose File > Save As, navigate to the Lesson06/Finished_Projects folder, name the file Tickets_final.pdf, and click Save.
- 8 Click the Upload To Document Cloud button in the toolbar.

Both PDF documents are now available on Document Cloud, so you can open and work with them on any device using a web browser or an Acrobat app. The original versions remain untouched in your Lesson06/Assets folder.

Using the Acrobat Reader app

You'll view the Postcard PDF file and comment on it in the Acrobat Reader app. If you're using the app on a tablet, you'll make some simple edits to the document as well. Changes you make to the PDF file will be saved to the version stored on Document Cloud, which is accessible from the other apps, the web, and Acrobat DC.

You can view, annotate, share, or print PDF files. You can also rotate or delete pages in a document using the Organize Pages tool, combine documents into one PDF using the Combine Files tool, and convert native documents to PDF using the Create PDF tool, all available in the app on both phones and tablets.

Opening PDF files in the Acrobat Reader app

You can open PDF files that are already stored on your phone or tablet, PDFs from Document Cloud, or PDFs from Dropbox, Google Drive, or other remote accounts. You'll open the Postcard_final PDF file you just uploaded to Document Cloud.

- 1 Open the Acrobat Reader app on a mobile device. You'll have access to a few more features on a tablet, but most are available on a mobile phone.
- 2 Sign in to Document Cloud using your Adobe ID if you're prompted to do so. Click Home if the Home view isn't active.

The Home view opens. It displays your recent files, including files you've recently worked with on or saved to Document Cloud.



- **3** Tap Files at the bottom of the screen to see other documents. Then, tap Document Cloud. (On a tablet, tap Locations first.)
- 4 From the list of documents on Document Cloud, select Postcard_final.



Acrobat Reader displays both pages of the postcard.

5 Tap the View Settings button at the top of the screen, and choose Single Page (iOS) or Page-By-Page (Android).



A single page of the document appears.

- **6** Turn the device sideways, if it isn't already, so you can see the wide postcard. Tap the PDF to display it without menus.
- **7** Swipe to the left to see the back of the postcard (the second page).



8 Tap the PDF to display the menus again, and then tap the View Settings button, and select Continuous (iOS) or Continuous Pages (Android).

You'll be commenting on the file in the next exercise, and it's easier to highlight or select text in Continuous Pages view.

Commenting on PDF files in Acrobat Reader

You can comment on PDF files in a document sent to you through a shared review process, but you can add notations to any PDF file. You'll add a comment to this draft of the postcard. Changes you make to the document are saved to the version on Document Cloud immediately.

1 Tap the Edit button in the lower right corner, and choose Comment.



2 Tap the Sticky Note tool, and then click near the end of the text on the second page, and type **Where can they get tix?** Click Post to apply the note.

Done	Postcard_fina	al PDF									¢.	a 🖬	, p	٩	[[†]]	***
					ø	Ŧ	T 7	Γ /	r (9	D						E
	Your sur Get you	oport help r tickets to	s us gro oday!	ow.												
Where can	n they get <u>tix</u> ?															Post
5	10		1				And				We					
1 q	2 W	e a		4 r	t		б У		7 U		8 i	9 0		0 p		×
	° a	# S	s d		å f	g	Γ	h	Γ	j	, k	Ι	ï		return	
↔	% Z	x	Ι	c	v		b		'n	m	ı	!		?	Û	6
.?123		₽											?123		Ŵ]

3 Tap the Highlight tool, and then tap, hold, and drag your finger over some text to highlight it.



You can add sticky notes, highlight text, strike through or underline text, add text, and draw on the page. Unlike the commenting tools in Acrobat DC on the desktop, you can add comments only to sticky notes and add text notations.

- **4** Tap the Undo button () at the top to undo the highlighting.
- 5 Tap Done (iOS) or the Check mark button (Android) in the top left corner to accept your notations and exit commenting mode. Acrobat Reader saves your changes to the document on Document Cloud.

Editing PDF files in Acrobat Reader (tablet only)

If you're using the Acrobat Reader app on a tablet, you can make simple text and image edits to PDF files. You'll correct a spelling error and adjust the size and position of an image on the postcard.

- 1 Tap the Edit button in the lower right corner, and choose Edit PDF.
- **2** Scroll to see the second page. Click the text block, and then tap an insertion point before the *v* in *Hors d'oervres*, which is spelled wrong.
- **3** Backspace to delete the letter *r*, and then type **u**.



- **4** Tap and hold your finger down over the photo to select and highlight it. Then drag it up slightly on the page. Drag the lower left corner handle down and to the left to make the image larger.
- 5 When you're satisfied with the changes you've made, tap Done or the Check mark button at the top of the screen to exit editing mode. Acrobat saves the changes to Document Cloud.
- 6 Tap the Back button at the top of the screen to return to the Home view.

Using Document Cloud in a web browser

Document Cloud in a browser includes the same Home view you see in Acrobat DC on the desktop and in the Acrobat Reader app, but it also provides a Quick Start set of tools to help you do what you want to do quickly. Unlike Acrobat Reader, in Document Cloud, commenting tools are available only if the PDF has been shared for review. You also cannot edit text or objects in a PDF file using Document Cloud in a browser.

You can access Document Cloud in a browser on a computer or on a device. It provides some features that aren't available in the Acrobat Reader app, such as the ability to send documents for review. You'll use Document Cloud to share the Postcard PDF file for review.

- 1 Open Document Cloud in a browser on a computer or a device. Document Cloud is at documentcloud.adobe.com.
- 2 Sign in with your Adobe ID if you're prompted to do so.

Document Cloud displays the Home view.

3 Click the Postcard_final file in the Recent files list to open it.

< > m [🔒 docu	imentcloud.a	dobe.com		C	<u>í</u> + í	5
人。Document Cloud		₽ Search					0 🏚 🥥	14
Home	Quick start							
Apps								
Files	4		B		4	Ċ.		
SHARED	Upload File	Create PDF	Export PDF	Combine Files	Organize Pages	Share Files	Send for Review	
For Viewing	Recent							
For Review		NAME		OPE	INED		SIZE	
For signature		Postcard_fin	al	Too	lay, 11:29 AM	9	43 KB •••	
	0 7	Tickets_final		Tod	lay, 11:11 AM	6	40 KB •••	

Document Cloud displays both pages of the Postcard_final document.

4 Click the menu button in the toolbar to see a list of available tools, if they aren't already displayed.

Document Cloud displays the Export PDF, Fill & Sign, Organize Pages, and Send For Signature tools.



- 5 Click the menu button to close the list of tools.
- **6** Click the Share button. Then, select Review File, and enter an email address for a reviewer. (You can enter your own email address or a colleague's.) Enter a personalized message if you want to, and then click Send.



Document Cloud sends the PDF for review and reports its status.

7 Click Go To Review.

Document Cloud displays the PDF file in Review mode, with existing comments listed on the side near their placement on the page. Now you have access to the same commenting tools you have in Acrobat Reader.



8 Click Done to exit Review mode, and then click I'm Finished.

You'll learn more about commenting and shared review processes in Lesson 10, "Using Acrobat in a Review Cycle."

9 In the Home view, select the Tickets_final.pdf file. Then select the Fill & Sign tool.

You could use the Fill & Sign tool in the browser, but you'll use the app so you can set up a profile. Selecting the Fill & Sign tool in Document Cloud in the browser lets Document Cloud recognize the document as a form.

10 Click Close, and then click the Back button to return to the Home view.

Using the Fill & Sign app

The Adobe Fill & Sign app performs the same function as the Fill & Sign tool in Acrobat DC or the Acrobat Reader app. Because it's available on your mobile device, you can complete forms wherever you are. The Fill & Sign app also lets you create a profile that you can use to quickly complete standard form fields. You'll use the Fill & Sign app to complete the ticket order form for an event.

1 Open the Fill & Sign app on your device. Sign in to Document Cloud if you aren't already signed in.

The app displays forms that have been accessed recently in Document Cloud or on your device. The app displays only the PDF files it recognizes as forms.

- 2 Select the Profile button at the top left corner of the screen.
- **3** Enter a full name, first name, last name, and information for any other fields you'd like to be able to complete quickly.

The profile includes standard identity and contact information. You can add custom fields that you encounter frequently, too.

- 4 Tap elsewhere on the screen to close the Profile window.
- **5** Tap the Tickets_final PDF to open it.
- 6 Tap at the beginning of the Name field to click an insertion point. Then tap the Profile button at the bottom of the screen, and select Full Name to enter it.
- 7 Tap next to *Adults* to insert text, and type the number 2. Tap the small capital A to reduce the text size; tap the large capital A to increase the size of the text.
- 8 Tap the Will Call box, and then tap the menu button (...) in the floating toolbar.Tap the check mark to add it to the box.



• Note: If the Tickets_ final PDF file isn't listed, email it to yourself and open it from your device's drive. **9** Tap the signature field, and then tap the Signature button at the bottom of the screen. Tap Create Signature, sign a name, and then click Done.

			Tick	kets_	final		1	Done												
		Address Phone n Email ac	umber_	Ļ	*		1													
		Tickets 1 2 Adul Chile	requeste ts @ \$50 leen @ \$	d: 125				-												
Yes		D Fil pi	ck them e mail m	up at W ty ticket	fill Call s to me			-												
		OCheck	enclose	id Logia	nformatio	en below)														
_	A	Exercity.	en date																	
		Signature		1	-				Cancel				Create	e Signa	ture				0	Done
			8		6	2												-		
									h		0	1	Λ			1.	7	P	5	
Q	w	E	R	T	γl	U	1	P	Sign	2	1	n	Ľ	U	2	V	\mathcal{D}	レ		
A	S	D	F	G	н	J	к	L					1997 (197							
•	z	x	С	۷	в	Ν	М	\otimes												
123	٢	₽		sp	ace		re	eturn	Sa	ve to Or	nline Profile						(÷	a (Clear

You can save your signature in your profile for use online in other apps.

- **10** Tap the Share button in the lower right corner of the screen, and tap your Mail app icon to email the completed form. You can log in to your email account and send the form to yourself, or tap the back button to return to Adobe Fill & Sign.
- 11 Click Done to return to the Home view of the Adobe Fill & Sign app.

Had you been ordering tickets, you'd have completed the entire form, and you could submit it using email, print it, or save it to Document Cloud and then upload it to a website.

Using the Adobe Scan app

You can use the Adobe Scan app to use the camera on your phone or tablet as a scanner. Once you've scanned a document, you can use Acrobat DC to recognize text, share the document, convert it into a form, and generally do anything you can do with any other PDF file.

You can open Adobe Scan directly, and you can also access Adobe Scan from within the Acrobat Reader app by tapping Scan in the tools menu.

- 1 Open Adobe Scan on your device.
- **2** Tap the Settings button in the upper left corner.
- **3** Tap Preferences, and make sure Run Text Recognition is enabled if you want to scan text-based documents into editable PDF documents. If you want to save the original scans to your photos, tap Save Originals To Photos.
- **4** Close the Settings menu to return to the Home view.
- **5** Tap the Camera button in the lower right corner to activate your camera. Give permission for the app to use your camera if prompted.
- **6** Tap the Auto-Capture button ([+]) to disable it.

When Auto-Capture is enabled, the Adobe Scan app identifies documents and takes the photo automatically. When it's disabled, you must press the Capture button manually.

7 Position your device over a document, and press the Capture button.



- 8 Tap the Scans button in the lower right corner to see the scan.
- **9** Tap the Crop button in the bottom toolbar to adjust the borders of the image. Tap the check mark when you're done.
- **10** Tap the Rotate button to rotate the scanned image one-quarter turn clockwise, if necessary.



- **11** Tap the Color button to change the color and contrast of the image.
- **12** Tap Save PDF when you're satisfied with the scan. The scan is saved to Document Cloud.

Review questions

- 1 Which commenting tools are available in the Acrobat Reader app?
- 2 How can you use Document Cloud in a web browser?
- 3 Why would you want to save a profile in the Fill & Sign app?

Review answers

- 1 The Acrobat Reader app includes the Sticky Note, Highlight, Strikethrough, Underline, Add Text, and Pencil tools for commenting on PDF documents.
- 2 You can use Document Cloud in a web browser to view and work with your PDF documents from any computer or device. When you make changes to a PDF in the Acrobat Reader app, those changes are saved to Document Cloud.
- **3** A profile can help you complete form fields much faster, as you can select previously designated answers to populate fields.

7 USING ACROBAT WITH MICROSOFT OFFICE FILES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Convert a Microsoft Word file to Adobe PDF.
- Convert Word headings and styles to PDF bookmarks. (Windows only)
- Convert Word comments to PDF notes. (Windows only)
- Change the Adobe PDF conversion settings. (Windows only)
- Convert a Microsoft Excel file to Adobe PDF.
- Use the Spreadsheet Split view.
- Convert a Microsoft PowerPoint presentation to Adobe PDF.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.

Statement of Work for Local

Meridien Conference Promotion Program



Presented by



Using Acrobat PDFMaker and the Create PDF tool in Acrobat, you can easily convert Microsoft Office documents to PDF. In Windows, PDFMaker settings also let you convert Word headings to bookmarks, include comments, and start email-based reviews.

Getting started

How you convert Microsoft Office documents to PDF depends on your operating system, which application you're using, and its version. When you install Acrobat DC, it adds Acrobat PDFMaker to Microsoft Office 2007 or later applications in Windows—including Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, and Microsoft PowerPoint—and to Microsoft Word 2016 or later and Microsoft PowerPoint 2016 or later in macOS. If you're using macOS, Acrobat DC also makes it easy to convert Microsoft Excel documents to PDF.

You need to have one or more of the applications listed above installed on your system to complete the exercises. If you do not use these Microsoft Office applications, skip this lesson. Visit the Adobe website (www.adobe.com) to see which versions of Microsoft Office are supported.

Because the process for converting PDF documents is so different depending on the operating system, we've separated the exercises for Windows and macOS. If you are using only one operating system, skip the sections regarding the other operating system.

For Windows exercises, this lesson assumes you are using Microsoft Office 365, but the steps are similar in other versions.

About Acrobat PDFMaker

Acrobat PDFMaker makes it easy to convert Microsoft Office documents to PDF. When you install Acrobat in Windows, it automatically installs PDFMaker for supported Microsoft Office applications (Microsoft Office 2007 and later) it finds on the system. In macOS, Acrobat installs PDFMaker for Microsoft Word 2016 or later and Microsoft PowerPoint 2016 or later. PDFMaker options are available on the Acrobat ribbon. In Windows, you can control the settings used in the PDF conversion, automatically email the PDF file, and set up an email review process without ever leaving the Microsoft application; PDFMaker can also attach your Office source file to the PDF file.

PDF files are often substantially smaller than their source files. You can also create PDF/A-compliant files from Office files in Windows.

If you don't see the Acrobat ribbon in your Windows app, choose File > Options, select Add-Ins in the Options dialog box, and select Acrobat PDFMaker Office COM Addin. Then close and restart your Microsoft application.

In Windows, Acrobat installs essentially the same buttons and commands in Word, PowerPoint, and Excel. There are, however, some application-specific differences.



Acrobat PDFMaker for Word on macOS installs just two buttons: Create PDF and Preferences. The Acrobat ribbon in PowerPoint for macOS includes only the Create PDF button.

		ю ·	J 🔒 🔻	🗿 P	luralist [Com	patibility Mo	de]	Q~ Search in Document	(<u>۰</u>
Home	Insert	Design	Layout	References	Mailings	Review	View	Acrobat	2+ Share	^
t t	8=									
Create Prefe PDF	rences									

Converting Microsoft Word files to Adobe PDF (Windows)

Word is a popular authoring program that makes it easy to create a variety of types of documents. Word documents often include text styles and hyperlinks and may contain comments added during a review process. When you create an Adobe PDF document from your Word document in Windows, you can convert text using specific Word styles, such as headings, to Acrobat bookmarks, and you can convert comments to Acrobat notes. Hyperlinks in a Word document are preserved when it is converted to PDF. Your Adobe PDF file will look just like your Word file and retain the same functionality, but it will be equally accessible to readers on all platforms, regardless of whether they have the Word application. PDF files created from Word files can also be tagged, improving accessibility and making the content easy to repurpose.

Converting Word headings and styles to PDF bookmarks

If your Word document contains headings and styles that you want to convert to linked bookmarks in Adobe PDF, you must identify these headings and styles in the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box. (Word Heading 1 through Heading 9 styles are converted automatically.) You'll convert a statement of work document that was formatted using custom styles. You'll need to make sure that the styles used are converted to linked bookmarks when you create the Adobe PDF file. ► Tip: If you have an Acrobat or Creative Cloud subscription, you can convert Microsoft Office files to PDF on a tablet or phone using the Acrobat DC mobile app.

- 1 Start Microsoft Word.
- 2 Depending on your version, click Open Other Documents, or choose File > Open. Then navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and doubleclick the SOW draft.docx file. Choose File > Save As, rename the file SOW draft_final.docx, and save it in the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.
- 3 If the document opens in Protected View mode, click Enable Editing.

First, you'll change the PDF settings to create bookmarks based on the styles used in the document.

4 Click Acrobat to open the Acrobat ribbon, and then click Preferences.



The Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box contains the settings that control PDF conversion. There are different tabs available, depending on the application. In Word, the dialog box includes a Word tab and a Bookmarks tab.

- 5 Click the Bookmarks tab to select which styles are used to create bookmarks.
- **6** Scroll down the list, and select the Bookmark option for each of the following styles: Second Level, Third Level, Title, and Top Level. These are the styles you want to use to create bookmarks.

ark Options Convert Word He Convert Word St	eadings to Bookma	rks				
Convert Word H	eadings to Bookman	rks				
Convert Word St						
	yles to Bookmarks)				
Conunt Word B	nokmarke					
Conventivolo Di	AUKILIAI KS					
lement		Туре	Bookmark	Level	~	
Heading 9		Heading		9		
Second level		Heading		2		
Subtitle		Heading		2		
third level		Heading		3		
Top level		Heading		1		
third level body		Style				
Trio		Style	(A)	1		
TOA Heading		Style	9	1	37	
TOCI		Chile	H		~	
	Convert Word Be lement Heading 9 Second level Subtite third level Top level third level body Ton Heading TOO 1	Convert Word Bookmarks lement Heading 9 Second level Subbile third level Top level bird level body Top A Heading Top 1	Convert Word Bookmarks lement Type Heading 9 Heading Subtile Heading Subtile Heading Top level Heading third level Heading third level Heading third level Style TOA Heading Style Too 1 Code	Convert Word Bookmarks Iement Type Bookmark, Heading 9 Heading Subtle Heading Style third level Heading IC third level Heading IC third level body IC TOA Heading Style IC TOA Heading Style IC TOA Heading IC TOA HEADI	Convert Word Bookmarks Iement Type Bookmark Level Heading 9 Heading 9 Second level Heading 2 Subtrie Heading 2 third level Heading 3 Top level Heading 3 Top level Style 1 TOA Heading Style 1 TOA Heading 3 Top level 1	Convert Word Bookmarks Iement Type Bookmark Level Heading 9 Heading 9 Second level Heading 9 Libite Heading 9 Libite Heading 3 Top level Heading 1 Libite Headi

Notice that the level for Title and Top Level is automatically set to 1, Second Level is set to 2, and Third Level is set to 3. These are the hierarchical levels of PDF bookmarks. To change the level setting for a style, click its level number, and then choose a new level from the pop-up menu.

Any settings that you make in the Bookmarks tab apply only to the conversion of Word documents.

Converting Word comments to PDF notes

You needn't lose any comments that have been added to your Word document when you convert the document to Adobe PDF: You can convert them to PDF notes. There are two comments in this document that need to remain available in the PDF.

1 Click the Word tab in the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box, and select Convert Displayed Comments To Notes In Adobe PDF.

The Comments area displays information about the comments that will be included. Make sure that the box in the Include column is selected.

- 2 To change the color of the note in the Adobe PDF document, click repeatedly on the icon in the Color column to cycle through the available color choices. We chose blue.
- **3** To have the note automatically open in the PDF document, select the Notes Open option. You can always close the note in the PDF document later if you wish.



Any settings that you make in the Word tab apply only to the conversion of Word documents.

Specifying the conversion settings

In every Office application for Windows, PDFMaker includes the Settings tab, which is where you can select the conversion settings that determine how the PDF file is created. For most purposes, the predefined settings files (or presets) work well. However, if you need to customize the conversion settings, click Advanced Settings, and then make the changes appropriate for your file.

You'll convert this document using the Standard settings file.

- 1 Click the Settings tab.
- 2 From the Conversion Settings menu, choose Standard.
- **3** Verify that View Adobe PDF Result is selected. When this option is selected, Acrobat automatically displays the Adobe PDF file you create as soon as the conversion is complete.
- 4 Make sure that Create Bookmarks is selected.
- **5** Make sure that Enable Accessibility And Reflow With Tagged Adobe PDF is selected. Tagging PDF files makes them more accessible.

For more information on making your PDF files accessible, see Lesson 3, "Reading and Working with PDF Files."

6 Select Attach Source File to attach the Word document to the PDF file. This option can be useful if you want the viewer to have access to the original for editing purposes.



- 7 Click OK to apply your settings.
- 8 Choose File > Save to save your work so far.

• Note: Acrobat PDFMaker will use these conversion settings for converting Word documents until you change them.

Converting your Word file

Now that you've defined the settings to be used for the conversion, you're ready to convert your Word file to Adobe PDF.

1 Click the Create PDF button on the Acrobat ribbon.

Auto	Save (or	8 21	08		SOW draft_fina	al - Saved to this	s PC	Lis	a	œ	-		×
File	Home	Insert Dra	w Design	Layout	References	Mailings R	Review View	Help	Acrobat	Q	Tell me	6	P
Create PDF	Preferences	Create and Share	Mail Merge Ser	Create and Ind For Review	Acrobat Comments -	Create PDI and Run Acti	F Insert ion Media						
Crea	Lobe PDF	Create and	Share	Review And G	Comment	Create and Run	Action Media						~

2 In the Save Adobe PDF As dialog box, name the file **SOW draft.pdf**, and save it in the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.

PDFMaker converts the Word document to Adobe PDF. The status of the conversion is shown in the Acrobat PDFMaker message box.

Because you selected View Adobe PDF Result, Acrobat automatically displays your converted file. Notice that the Word comment has been converted to an open Adobe PDF note.

3 Scroll if necessary to see the first note. After you have read the sticky note, click the close button on the sticky note.



Tip: In Acrobat DC, you can edit headers and footers in PDF files created from Office 2007 and later files.

4 Click the Bookmarks button (□) in the navigation pane, and view the bookmarks that were created automatically.

In Acrobat DC, when you select a bookmark in the navigation pane, the link takes you directly to the heading, not the top of the page that contains the heading.

5 Click the Attachments button (𝔄) in the navigation pane to verify that your original Word file is attached.



- **6** When you have finished reviewing the file, close it.
- 7 Choose File > Exit to quit Acrobat.
- 8 Quit Microsoft Word.

► Tip: If you simply want to convert your Microsoft Office file to Adobe PDF using the current PDFMaker conversion settings, drag the Office file onto the Acrobat DC icon on your desktop or into an empty document pane in the Acrobat work area.

Creating Adobe PDF files from Word mail-merge templates

Word mail-merges generate documents such as form letters, which are personalized with the names and addresses of the individuals to whom they will be sent. With Acrobat PDFMaker, you can use a Word mail-merge template and its corresponding data file to output mail-merges directly to PDF. You can even set up PDFMaker to attach those PDF files to email messages that are generated during the PDF-creation process. Click the Mail Merge button in the Acrobat ribbon to start the process. For more information, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Converting Word documents to PDF (macOS)

You can quickly convert a Microsoft Word 2016 or later document to PDF in macOS using the Acrobat ribbon in Word. The Create PDF button on the Acrobat ribbon uses the Create Adobe PDF cloud service to convert the file; to use this service, you must be signed in to Acrobat and be connected to the Internet. Acrobat uses the current page settings for the document to make the conversion. If comments are included in the document, they'll be included in the PDF—even if they're not currently visible in Word; delete comments from the document before creating the PDF if you don't want to include them.

- 1 Open Word.
- 2 Click Open or choose File > Open. Then navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and double-click the SOW draft.docx file. Choose File > Save As, rename the file SOW draft_final.docx, and save it in the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.
- 3 Click Acrobat to open the Acrobat ribbon.
- 4 Click Preferences on the Acrobat ribbon.



The Acrobat Create PDF Settings dialog box opens. Select Prompt For Using Adobe Create PDF Cloud Service if you want Acrobat to ask you before using the Adobe Create PDF cloud service when you click Create PDF in the Acrobat ribbon.

- 5 Click OK to close the dialog box.
- 6 Choose File > Page Setup to see the page settings Acrobat will use. Click OK to accept the settings.
- 7 If you made any changes, save the document.

8 Click Create PDF on the Acrobat ribbon. If prompted, click Yes to use the Adobe Create PDF cloud service.

		ю -	J 🔒 🔻	🖻 P	luralist [Com	patibility Mo	de]	Q - Search in Document	(D.
Home	Insert	Design	Layout	References	Mailings	Review	View	Acrobat	🛓 Share	^
Cre PLA	erences									
X	Acr You usin Clic Clic	robat Crea can create l g Adobe Cri k Yes to crea k No to crea Remember	te PDF high quality, i sate PDF clou ate a rich PD te a PDF with my choice	rich and accessib ud service. F using this servi nout using this se	le PDFs ce rvice Yes					

Acrobat converts the document and opens it in Acrobat.

9 Close the PDF document, and quit Word.

Converting Excel documents (Windows)

When you convert Excel documents to PDF in Windows, you can easily select and order the worksheets you want to include, retain all links, and create bookmarks. You'll create an Adobe PDF file from an Excel document after customizing the conversion settings.

Converting the entire workbook

You can choose to convert an entire workbook, a selection, or selected sheets to PDF. In this exercise, you'll convert an entire workbook.

- 1 Start Microsoft Excel.
- 2 Depending on your version, click Open Other Workbooks, or choose File > Open. Then, navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and doubleclick the Financials.xlsx file. Then choose File > Save As, rename the file Financials_final.xlsx, and save it in the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.

3 If the file opens in Protected View mode, click Enable Editing.

This Excel file includes two worksheets. The first lists construction costs, and the second shows operating costs. You'll need to convert both of these sheets to include them in the PDF. You'll start by changing the PDF conversion settings.

- 4 Click Acrobat to open the Acrobat ribbon.
- 5 Click Preferences in the Acrobat ribbon.



- **6** In the Settings tab of the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box, choose Smallest File Size from the Conversion Settings menu, because you're going to be emailing the PDF file.
- 7 Select the Fit Worksheet To A Single Page option.
- 8 Make sure that the Enable Accessibility And Reflow With Tagged Adobe PDF option is selected. When you create tagged PDFs, you can more easily copy tabular data from PDF files back into spreadsheet applications. Creating tagged PDFs also makes your files more accessible.
9 Select the Prompt For Conversion Settings option to open a dialog box at the beginning of the file conversion process, which will allow you to specify which sheets to include and in what order.

PDFMaker will use these conversion settings when converting Excel documents to PDF until you change the settings.

10 Click OK to apply your settings.

Settings Security					
PDFMaker Settin	ngs				
Conversion	n Settings:	Smallest File Size		~	
Use th viewin	ese settin g experier	gs to create high quality Adobe PC ace and printing of business docum soult	IF documents su nents. Created F	uitable for a deligh PDF documents c	an 👻
Prompt fo	Adobe P	DF file name	-		
Convert D	Document	information	Ad	vanced Settings.	
PDF/A Comp	pliance:	None			
Attach so Create B Add Link Enable A	ngs ource file lookmarks s Accessibili Comments	ity and Reflow with tagged Adobe fo	PDF		
Attach so Create B Add Link Convert Fit Works	ngs ource file lookmarks ss Accessibili Comments sheet to a oer width	ty and Reflow with tagged Adobe is	PDF		
Attach so Croate B Add Link Enable A Convent Fit Works Fit lo pag	ngs surce file lookmarks s Accessibili Comments sheet to a oer width or convers	ity and Reflow with tagged Adobe A single page ion settings	PDF		
Attach so Coreate B Add Link Enable A Converti Fit Vorks Fit to cop Prompt for Addbe	ngs pource file lookmarks is Accessibili Comments sheet to a ber width or convers pyright © 1 obe, the A domarks o untries, All	y and Reflow with tagged Adobe 4 single page ion settings 984-2018 Adobe Systems Incorpo date logo, Acrobat, the Adobe PC trademarks of Adobe Systems In other trademarks are the property	PDF rated and its lice IF logo and Pos corporated in th of their respectiv	nsors. All Rights IScript are either e United States a re owners.	Reserved. egistered nd/or other

In Acrobat, you can convert an oversized worksheet to a PDF that is one sheet wide and several sheets long. In the Settings tab of the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box, the Fit Worksheet To A Single Page option adjusts the size of each worksheet so that all the entries on that worksheet appear on the same page of the PDF. The Fit To Paper Width option adjusts the width of each worksheet so that all the columns on that worksheet appear on one page in the PDF.

Creating the PDF file

You'll convert the Excel workbook to a PDF file. PDFMaker uses the settings you specified earlier.

- 1 Click the Create PDF button on the Acrobat ribbon.
- 2 In the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box, select Entire Workbook.

This is the dialog box where you'd select specific material or worksheets, if you wanted to.

3 Click Convert To PDF.

Entire Workbook		
Selection Sheet(s)		
C Particip	Sheet Selection	
Construction Costs	Add >	Annual Operating Co
Annual Operating Co	< Remove	
	Add All >>	
	Arrange	
	Move Up	I I
< >	Move Down	< >
Conversion Options		
Actual Size		
Fit to paper width	ale avea	

4 In the Save Adobe PDF File As dialog box, click Save to save the file as **Financials_final.pdf** in the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.

Acrobat opens the PDF document automatically if View Result was selected in the Save Adobe PDF File As dialog box.



5 Review the Financials_final.pdf file in Acrobat, and then close the PDF file and close Excel.

Converting Excel spreadsheets (macOS)

Microsoft Excel for macOS doesn't include an Acrobat ribbon, but you can quickly convert Excel spreadsheets to PDF in Acrobat DC. Acrobat uses the current page setup settings in Excel to convert the document. Because Acrobat uses the Create Adobe PDF cloud service to convert the document, you must be connected to the Internet and signed in to Acrobat to use the feature.

- 1 Open Excel.
- 2 In Excel, click Open, or choose File > Open. Then, navigate to the Lesson07/ Assets folder, and double-click the Financials.xlsx file. Then choose File > Save As, rename the file Financials_final.xlsx, and save it in the Lesson07/Finished_ Projects folder.
- 3 Choose File > Page Setup. Select Landscape for Orientation. Then click OK.

		P	age Setup		
	Page	Margins	Header/Foote	r Sheet	
Orienta	tion				
		Portrait		andscape	
Scaling					
O Ad	just to: 10	00 🗘 % r	normal size		
⊖ Fit	to: 1	C Pag	ges wide by 1	C Tall	
First pag	ge number:	Auto			
				Cancel	K.

- 4 Choose File > Save to save the changes you made.
- 5 Open Acrobat, and choose File > Create > PDF From File.
- 6 Navigate to the Lesson07/Finished Projects folder, and double-click the Financials_final.xlsx file.

Acrobat uploads the file to Document Cloud and converts it. It then opens the PDF file in Acrobat.

- **7** Scroll through the document.
- 8 Close the PDF document, and quit Excel.

Using the Spreadsheet Split view

Whether you've converted an Excel worksheet in Windows or on macOS, when you work with spreadsheets, it is often useful to be able to keep the column or row names in view while scrolling up and down columns or across rows. The Spreadsheet Split command in Acrobat lets you do this.

1 In Acrobat, choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and open the GE_Schedule.pdf file.

This schedule is difficult to read onscreen because the type size is small if you have the view set to Fit Page. You'll use the Spreadsheet Split command to look more closely at some of the data. First you'll change the view of the page.

2 Choose Window > Spreadsheet Split to divide the document pane into four quadrants.

You can drag the splitter bars up, down, left, or right to resize the panes.

In Spreadsheet Split view, changing the zoom level changes the magnification in all the quadrants. (In Split view, you can have a different zoom level in each of the two windows.)

- 3 Drag the vertical splitter bar so that the categories fill the left pane.
- **4** Drag the horizontal splitter bar so that it is directly below the column headings.



- **5** Use the vertical scroll bar to scroll down through the categories. Because the column headers remain visible, it is easy to evaluate the schedule for each task.
- **6** When you are finished exploring the Spreadsheet Split view, close the GE_Schedule.pdf file without saving your work.

Converting PowerPoint presentations (Windows)

You can convert Microsoft PowerPoint presentations to PDF in the same way that you convert Microsoft Word documents. However, there are additional options available to help you preserve the look and feel of the presentation. You'll convert a simple presentation and preserve its slide transitions.

1 Start PowerPoint. Depending on the version of PowerPoint, click Open or choose File > Open. Then navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and doubleclick the Projector Setup.pptx file.

A Push transition has been applied to the slides in this file.

- 2 If the file opens in Protected View mode, click Enable Editing.
- 3 Click Acrobat to open the Acrobat ribbon.



4 Click Preferences in the Acrobat ribbon.

5 Select the Settings tab, and then select Convert Multimedia and Preserve Slide Transitions. Make sure View Adobe PDF Result is selected, too.



6 Click OK.

You can include speaker's notes and hidden slides, and specify other settings.

- 7 Click Create PDF in the Acrobat ribbon. Name the file Projector Setup_ final.pdf, and save it to the Lesson07/Final_Projects folder. Then click Save in the Save Adobe PDF dialog box. Acrobat opens the PDF file after conversion.
- 8 In Acrobat, choose View > Full Screen Mode. Then press the arrow keys to move through the presentation. The Push slide transitions remain in the PDF file. Press the Esc key to exit Full Screen mode. Then, close the PDF file and PowerPoint.





By sharing your expertise and personal experiences at the Meridien Conference, you are paving the way for a successful future for all of the attendees. We can't thank you enough for being a key part of the conference.



Converting PowerPoint presentations (macOS)

In Acrobat DC for macOS, you can convert Microsoft PowerPoint presentations to PDF the same way that you convert Word documents. Acrobat uses the current page setup settings in PowerPoint to convert the document. Because Acrobat uses the Create Adobe PDF cloud service to convert the document, you must be connected to the Internet and signed in to Acrobat to use the feature.

- 1 Open PowerPoint.
- 2 In PowerPoint, choose File > Open. Then navigate to the Lesson07/Assets folder, and double-click the Projector Setup.pptx file. Choose File > Save As, name the file Projector Setup_final.pptx, and save it to the Lesson07/Finished_Projects folder.
- 3 Choose File > Page Setup, and confirm the settings are appropriate. Click OK to close the dialog box.
- 4 If you made any changes, choose File > Save to save the changes you made.
- 5 Click Acrobat to open the Acrobat ribbon.
- 6 Click Create PDF in the Acrobat ribbon. Name the file Projector Setup_final. pdf, and save it to the Lesson07/Final_Projects folder.

	• 6	LO * (🚹 Pro	ojector Setup		Q~ Sea			
Home In:	ert	Design	Transitions	Animations	Slide Show	Review	View	Acrobat	2+ Share	
Create PDF										

Acrobat uploads the file to Document Cloud and converts it. It then opens the PDF file in Acrobat.

- 7 Scroll through the document.
- 8 Close the PDF document, and quit PowerPoint.

Review questions

- 1 In Windows, how can you be sure that Word styles and headings are converted to Acrobat bookmarks when you convert Word documents to Adobe PDF using PDFMaker?
- **2** How can you scroll through a spreadsheet in Acrobat without losing sight of the column headings?
- **3** Can you retain slide transitions when you save a PowerPoint presentation to PDF in Windows?
- 4 How can you quickly convert an Excel document to PDF in macOS?

Review answers

- 1 If you want Word headings and styles to be converted to bookmarks in Acrobat, select them for conversion in the Acrobat PDFMaker dialog box in Word for Windows. In Microsoft Word, click Preferences in the Acrobat ribbon (choose Adobe PDF > Change Conversion Settings in earlier versions of Word), and click the Bookmarks tab. Make sure that the required headings and styles are selected.
- 2 To see column headings while you review the content of a spreadsheet, choose Window > Spreadsheet Split, which divides the document pane into four quadrants. Move the divider bars where you want them, and then scroll through the rows.
- 3 Yes, you can retain slide transitions when you save a PowerPoint presentation to PDF in Windows. To do so, click Preferences in the Acrobat ribbon (or choose Adobe PDF > Change Conversion Settings in earlier versions of PowerPoint), and then make sure Preserve Slide Transitions is selected. PDFMaker uses those settings until you change them.
- 4 In macOS, you can quickly convert an Excel document to PDF using the Create Adobe PDF cloud service, as long as you're signed in to Acrobat and connected to the Internet. Make sure the file is ready to convert. Then, in Acrobat, choose File > Create > PDF From File, and double-click the Excel file.

8 COMBINING FILES

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Quickly and easily combine files of different types into one PDF document.
- Select individual pages to include in a combined PDF file.
- Customize a combined PDF file.
- Combine files into a PDF Portfolio (Acrobat Pro only).



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



You can easily combine multiple files, including files of different file types, into a coherent PDF document. You can even select which pages to include from each document.

About combining files

In Acrobat DC, you can assemble multiple files into an integrated PDF document. You can combine files of different formats, created in different applications. As long as you have applications installed that support the native documents' formats, they'll automatically be converted to PDF. For example, you could assemble all the documents for a specific project, including text documents, email messages, spreadsheets, CAD drawings, and PowerPoint presentations. When you combine the files, you can select specific pages from each document and then rearrange them. Acrobat converts each to PDF and then assembles them into a single PDF file.

If you have Acrobat DC Pro, you can choose to combine files in a PDF Portfolio. Files in a PDF Portfolio do not need to be converted to PDF; they can remain in their original format but are assembled into a coherent document. For more information, see the sidebar "Creating a PDF Portfolio" at the end of this lesson.

Selecting files to combine

In this lesson, you'll create a combined PDF file that contains documents for the board meeting of a fictitious beverage company. You'll assemble several PDF files, a logo, a Microsoft Word document, and a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet. You can select which pages of each document to include in the combined PDF file.

• Note: Acrobat requires the native application be installed in order to convert a document to PDF. If you do not have Word or Excel installed on your computer, you will not be able to include those files in your combined PDF. You can skip those files and complete the exercise without them.

Adding files

First, you'll select the files you want to include in the combined PDF file.

- 1 Start Acrobat.
- 2 Click Tools.

3 In the Tools Center, click the Combine Files tool in the Create & Edit category.

Home Tools			
Q Search tools			
Create & Edit			
•	- P P	۶N	
Create PDF	Combine Files	Organize Pages	Edit PDF
Open 🔻	Open 🔻	Open -	Open 💌

The Combine Files dialog box appears.

4 Click Add Files.

Combine Files	b • 🗇		:=	\$ (*)	•	Combine
		_				
			4			
Add files by c	licking the	button be	elow or dr	ag and d	rop them	here.
You c	an also add	the curre	ent open 1	tiles from	below.	
		Add				
	C	Add Ope	on Files)		

5 Navigate to the Lesson08/Assets folder.

The folder contains a GIF file, an Excel spreadsheet, a Word document, and several PDF files.

- **6** Select Aquo_Bottle.pdf, and then Shift-click Logo.gif to select the following files, and click Open (Windows) or Add Files (macOS):
 - Aquo_Bottle.pdf
 - Aquo_Building.pdf
 - Aquo_Costs.pdf
 - Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls
 - Aquo_Mkt_Summ.doc
 - Aquo_Overview.pdf
 - Logo.gif

		As	isets	٥	Q Search	
PDF	PDF	PDF	Contraction of the second seco	DOC		AQUO
Aquo_Bottle.pdf	Aquo_Building.pdf	Aquo_Costs.pdf	Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls	Aquo_Mkt_Summ. doc	Aquo_Overview.p	Logo.gif
Options					Cancel	Add Files

If you do not have the required software installed to convert a document, you won't be able to select it.

Browsing files

Acrobat displays a thumbnail for each selected file in the Combine Files dialog box. You can use those thumbnails to preview a document, select specific pages to include, delete a file, or rearrange the pages in the final file.

- 1 Select the Aquo_Bottle.pdf thumbnail.
- **2** Move the cursor over the thumbnail. Acrobat displays the filename, size, modification date, and the number of pages it contains.



3 Click the magnifying glass on the thumbnail to zoom in to the full page.



• Note: In macOS, the source applications (Microsoft Word, Excel, and PowerPoint) may open as you select the files. Acrobat uses the source applications to create the thumbnails it displays in the Combine Files dialog box. 4 Click anywhere in the dialog box outside of the preview page to close the preview box.



5 Move the cursor over the Aquo_Overview.pdf thumbnail, and click the Expand 3 Pages icon (a double-headed arrow) to see each of the pages in the document.



You can preview each page separately, rearrange them, or delete them from the combined PDF file.

6 Select the thumbnail of the third page in the Aquo_Overview.pdf file, and then click the Remove button (1) at the top of the dialog box.



Only two pages remain in the document.

7 Click the Collapse Document button (inward-pointing arrows) over the Aquo_ Overview.pdf thumbnail to collapse the document back to a single thumbnail.



• Note: If you weren't able to add the Aquo_ Fin_Ana.xls file to the Combine Files dialog box, skip step 8. 8 Move the cursor over the Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls file, and then click the Expand Two Pages icon to view the two worksheets it contains.

Aquo_Bottle.pdf	Aquo_Building.pdf	Aquo_Costs.pdf
		Augustational and a second
Aquo_Fin_Ana.xis	Annual Operating C	Aquo_Mumm.doc

Arranging pages

You can organize the pages in the merged file before you actually create it. Just drag and drop thumbnails in the Combine Files dialog box to place them in the order you want them to appear.

1 Drag the Logo.gif file to the top of the dialog box, so that it's the first file, before Aquo_Bottle.pdf.





2 Drag the first worksheet in the Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls file so that it appears right after the Aquo_Mkt_Summ.doc file.



You can arrange documents, or individual pages within those documents.

• Note: If you were unable to add the Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls file, skip step 2. Likewise, ignore any files in step 3 that don't appear in the Combine Files dialog box on your system.

- **3** Collapse any expanded documents, and then arrange the remaining documents so that they appear in the following order:
 - Logo.gif
 - Aquo_Bottle.pdf
 - Aquo_Overview.pdf
 - Aquo_Building.pdf
 - Aquo_Costs.pdf
 - Second sheet of Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls
 - Aquo_Mkt_Summ.doc
 - First sheet of Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls



4 Click the Switch To List View button at the top of the dialog box to see the filenames and information instead of thumbnails.

Name	Page Range	Size	Modified	Bookmark for File
Logo.gif	All Pages	4.27 KB	2/28/17, 12:27:50 PM	Logo
🔁 Aquo_Bottle.pdf	All Pages	217.41 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:44 PM	Aquo_Bottle
Aquo_Overview.pdf	1-2	214.85 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:14 PM	Aquo_Overview
Aquo_Building.pdf	All Pages	134.40 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:20 PM	Aquo_Building
🔁 Aquo_Costs.pdf	All Pages	123.58 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:04 PM	Aquo_Costs
Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls	Annual Operating Costs	111.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:36 PM	Aquo_Fin_Ana
Aquo_Mkt_Summ.doc	All Pages	210.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:24:24 PM	Aquo_Mkt_Summ
Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls	Construction Costs	111.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:36 PM	Aquo_Fin_Ana

Merging the files

When you've selected the pages you want to include and arranged them in the appropriate order, you're ready to combine the files.

- 1 Click the Options icon (🏟) at the top of the Combine Files dialog box.
- 2 In the Options dialog box, make sure the Default File Size option is selected.

The Smaller File Size option uses compression and resolution settings that are appropriate for onscreen display. The Default File Size option creates PDF files for business printing and viewing onscreen. The Larger File Size option uses High Quality Print conversion settings.

3 Make sure Always Add Bookmarks To Adobe PDF is selected.

When this option is selected, Acrobat creates bookmarks for the file as it converts and combines the documents.

- 4 Make sure Save As PDF Portfolio is not selected so that Acrobat combines all the files into a single combined PDF document.
- **5** Click OK to close the Options dialog box.
- 6 Click Combine.



Name	Page Range	Size	Modified	Bookmark for File	-
🔒 Logo.gif	All Pages	4.27 KB	2/28/17, 12:27:50 PM	Logo	
🔁 Aquo_Bottle.pdf	All Pages	217.41 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:44 PM	Aquo_Bottle	-
🔁 Aquo_Overview.pdf	1-2	214.85 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:14 PM	Aquo_Overview	1
🔁 Aquo_Building.pdf	All Pages	134.40 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:20 PM	Aquo_Building	
🔁 Aquo_Costs.pdf	All Pages	123.58 KB	2/28/17, 12:26:04 PM	Aquo_Costs	5
Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls	Annual Operating Costs	111.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:36 PM	Aquo_Fin_Ana	
Aquo_Mkt_Summ.doc	All Pages	210.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:24:24 PM	Aquo_Mkt_Summ	
🖱 Aquo_Fin_Ana.xls	Construction Costs	111.50 KB	2/28/17, 12:25:36 PM	Aquo_Fin_Ana	E
					×1

Acrobat reports its progress as it converts individual documents to PDF format and then combines the files. Some source applications may open and close during the conversion process. When Acrobat has finished merging the documents, it opens the resulting file, named Binder1.pdf. 7 Click the Bookmarks button () in the navigation pane to view the bookmarks Acrobat created for the document.



Because you moved a worksheet separately from the rest of the Excel document, that document is included twice in the list of bookmarks. In Windows, Acrobat creates additional bookmarks for individual pages, nested under the bookmark for the document name. Depending on your goals for the document, you might want to edit the bookmarks.

- 8 Browse through the document. The pages are in the order you specified.
- 9 Choose File > Save As, and save the document as Aquo presentation in the Lesson08/Finished_Projects folder.
- **10** Close the Aquo presentation.pdf file.

Creating a PDF Portfolio (Acrobat Pro)

In Acrobat DC Pro, you can assemble files of different formats into a PDF Portfolio. You do not need to convert files into PDF to include them in a PDF Portfolio.

PDF Portfolios offer several advantages over files merged into an ordinary PDF file or native files stored separately:

- You can add and remove component documents easily.
- You can quickly preview component files without having to pause for Open or Save dialog boxes.
- You can edit individual files within the PDF Portfolio without affecting the other files. You can also
 edit non-PDF files in their native applications from within a PDF Portfolio; any changes you make
 are saved to the file within the PDF Portfolio.
- You can search the entire PDF Portfolio or individual component documents, including non-PDF component files.
- You can add non-PDF files to an existing PDF Portfolio without converting them to PDF.

To create a merged PDF Portfolio:

1 Choose File > Create > PDF Portfolio.

The Create PDF Portfolio dialog box is similar to the Combine Files dialog box.

2 Click Add Files at the top of the dialog box, and then choose Add Files.

• • •	B Create PDF Portfolio	
Add Files 👻		** :=
Add Files ^①I		
Add Folders		
Add PDF from Scanner		
Add Webpage		
Add from Clipboard		
	Add files using the dropdown or drag and drop them here.	
	You can then arrange them in the order you want.	

- 3 Select the files you want to include, and click Open (Windows) or Add Files (macOS).
- 4 Arrange the files in the order you want them to appear in the PDF Portfolio.
- 5 Click Create.

Acrobat opens the PDF Portfolio, named Portfolio1.pdf. It lists the Portfolio components in the navigation pane on the left.

continues on next page

Creating a PDF Portfolio (Acrobat Pro) (continued)

To navigate the PDF Portfolio, click a component name on the left, use the Previous and Next buttons in the document taskbar, or press the Left and Right Arrow keys on your keyboard.



If the selected component is a non-PDF document, click Open Document to open the document in its native application, such as Microsoft Word. If the selected document is a PDF file, clicking Open Document opens a separate copy of the PDF document. You can extract individual documents from a PDF Portfolio, whether they're PDF files or native documents. To extract a file, navigate to the document in the PDF Portfolio, and then choose File > Extract File From Portfolio. Name the file, choose a folder for it, and click Save.

6 Choose File > PDF Portfolio.

The Save As PDF dialog box opens.

7 Select a folder for the PDF Portfolio, and then name it, and click Save.

Review questions

- 1 Can you include documents in non-PDF formats in a combined PDF file?
- 2 How do you arrange pages in a combined PDF file?
- 3 Why would you want to preview or browse a file in the Combine Files dialog box?
- **4** Name one advantage of a PDF Portfolio.

Review answers

- 1 Yes, you can include documents in any format in a combined PDF file, as long as you have the application that created the document installed. Acrobat converts documents to PDF as it combines the files.
- **2** To arrange pages in a combined PDF file, drag their thumbnails in the Combine Files dialog box.
- **3** It's handy to be able to preview or browse files in the Combine Files dialog box so that you can determine whether you want to include each file or all the pages of a file, and in which order.
- 4 PDF Portfolios provide several advantages:
 - You can add and remove component documents easily, including non-PDF files.
 - You can preview component files quickly.
 - You can edit individual files within the PDF Portfolio independently.
 - PDF Portfolios contain all their components, so you can share them easily.
 - You can search the entire PDF Portfolio, including non-PDF component files.

9 ADDING SIGNATURES AND SECURITY

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Use Acrobat Reader in Protected Mode (Windows only).
- Apply password protection to a file to restrict who can open it.
- Apply a password to prevent others from printing or changing a PDF file.
- Use Adobe Sign to send documents for digital signatures.
- Learn about creating and using digital IDs in Acrobat.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.

{customs}

Statement of Work

Presented to GlobalCorp for Project Management Services



June 12, 2017

The names and logo designs referred to in this sample artwork are fictional and not intended to refer to any actual organization, products or services.

You can keep your PDF documents secure through password protection, certification, and digital signatures.

Getting started

Acrobat DC provides several tools to help you secure your PDF documents. You can use passwords to prevent unauthorized users from opening, printing, or editing PDF files. With a Document Cloud or Creative Cloud subscription, you can use Adobe Sign to send a document to others for their digital signatures. Alternatively, you can use digital IDs to sign documents and certify PDF documents, and you can use a certificate to encrypt PDF documents so that only an approved list of users can open them. If you want to save security settings for later use, you can create a security policy that stores security settings. In Acrobat Pro, you can also permanently remove sensitive content from your PDF documents using the Redaction feature (see Lesson 5, "Editing Content in PDF Files").

First you'll learn about Protected Mode in Acrobat Reader for Windows, and then you'll work with the security features in Acrobat itself.

Viewing documents in Protected Mode in Reader (Windows only)

As mentioned in Lesson 1, by default, Acrobat Reader DC for Windows opens PDF files in Protected Mode (known as "sandboxing" to IT professionals). In Protected Mode, Reader confines any processes to the application itself, so that potentially malicious PDF files do not have access to your computer and its system files.

To complete this exercise, you must use Acrobat Reader DC for Windows, but Acrobat Reader is not automatically installed with Acrobat. You can download the free installer at get.adobe.com/reader.

- 1 Open Acrobat Reader DC in Windows.
- 2 Choose File > Open, and navigate to the Lesson09/Assets folder.
- 3 Select Travel Guide.pdf, and click Open.



The Travel Guide.pdf file opens in Acrobat Reader. You can access all of the Reader menus and tools. However, the PDF file cannot make calls to your system outside the Reader environment.

- **4** Choose File > Properties.
- 5 In the Document Properties dialog box, click the Advanced tab.
- 6 View the Protected Mode status at the bottom of the dialog box. It's On by default.

Document Properties			>
Description Security Fonts Custom	Advanced		
PDF Settings			
Base URL:			
Search Index:			
Trapped: No			
Print Dialog Presets			
Page Scaling: D	fault		
DuplexMode: S	nplex		
Paper Source by Page Size: N	in the second		
Print Page Range:			
Number of Copies:	efault		
Reading Options			
Binding: LeftEdge			
Language:			
Protected Mode: On			
		OK	Cancel

You can always confirm that a document is open in Protected Mode by viewing the Document Properties dialog box.

7 Click OK to close the Document Properties dialog box. Then close the Travel Guide.pdf file, and quit Reader.

Adobe strongly recommends that you use Acrobat Reader in Protected Mode. However, some third-party plug-ins may not work in Protected Mode. If you need to disable Protected Mode, choose Edit > Preferences, select Security (Enhanced) from the list of categories, and deselect Enable Protected Mode At Startup. You'll need to restart Acrobat Reader for the changes to take effect.

About security in Acrobat

You can secure a PDF using any of the following security methods:

- Add passwords and set security options to restrict opening, editing, and printing PDFs.
- Encrypt a document so that only a specified set of users has access to it.
- Save the PDF as a certified document. Certifying a PDF adds a certifying signature (which may be visible or invisible) that lets the document author restrict changes to the document.
- Apply server-based security policies to PDFs (for example, using Adobe LiveCycle Rights Management). Server-based security policies are especially useful if you want others to have access to PDFs for a limited time.

Viewing security settings

When you open a document that has restricted access or some type of security applied to it, you'll see a Security Settings button (\square) in the navigation pane to the left of the document window.

- 1 Start Acrobat. Then choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson09/Assets folder, and open the Sponsor_secure.pdf file. If the Acrobat Security Settings dialog box appears, click Cancel; if the Trusted Certificates Update dialog box appears, click OK.
- 2 Notice that "(SECURED)" appears after the filename in the title bar.
- **3** Open the Comment tool, and notice that the commenting and text markup tools are unavailable.



Note: You can use FIPs mode in Acrobat and Reader to restrict data protection to Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 approved algorithms. In FIPS mode, you cannot apply password-based security policies or create self-signed certificates. For more information, see Acrobat Help. 4 Click the triangle on the left side of the document window to open the navigation pane, if it isn't already open. Click the Security Settings button (▲) in the navigation pane to view the security settings. Click the Permission Details link to view more detail.



The Document Properties dialog box lists each action and whether it is allowed. As you read down the list, you'll see that commenting is not allowed, which is why the related tools are dimmed. Signing, printing, editing, and other actions are also not allowed in this document.

5 When you have finished reviewing the information, click OK to close the Document Properties dialog box.

ocument Properties		
Description Security Fonts Initial Vie	w Custom Advanced	
Document Security		
The document's Security Method rest security restrictions, set the Security N	ricts what can be done to the document. To remove Aethod to No Security.	
Security Method: Password Sec	cuñty v	Change Settings
Can be Opened by: Acrobat 7.0 a	nd later	Show Details
All contents of the document are enco metadata.	rypted and search engines cannot access the document's	
Document Restrictions Summary		
Printing:	Not Allowed	
Changing the Document:	Not Allowed	
Document Assembly:	Not Allowed	
Content Copying:	Not Allowed	
Content Copying for Accessibility:	Allowed	
Page Extraction:	Not Allowed	
Commenting:	Not Allowed	
Filling of form fields:	Not Allowed	
Signing:	Not Allowed	
Creation of Template Pages:	Not Allowed	
Help	ОК	Cancel

6 Choose File > Close to close the Sponsor_secure.pdf file.

Adding security to PDF files

You can add security to your Adobe PDF files when you first create them, or you can add it later. You can even add security to files that you receive from someone else, unless the creator of the document has limited who can change security settings.

Now, you'll add password protection to limit who can open your document and who can change the security settings.

Adding passwords

You can add two kinds of passwords to protect your Adobe PDF documents. A Document Open password allows only users who enter the password to open the document. A Permissions password allows only users who enter the password to change the permissions for the document, so that they can print or modify the document or perform other changes you've restricted.

You'll add protection to a logo file so that no one can change its contents and so that unauthorized users can't open and use the file.

 Choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson09/Assets folder, and open the Local_Logo.pdf file.

There is no Security Settings button in the navigation pane, because no security has been applied to this document.

- 2 Choose File > Save As, save the file in the Lesson09/Finished_Projects folder, and name the file Local_Logo1.pdf.
- **3** Click Protect in the Tools pane.
- **4** In the Protect toolbar, click Encrypt, and choose 2 Encrypt With Password. Click Yes when Acrobat asks whether you want to change the security on the document.



► Tip: As long as you have the password, you can open passwordprotected and encrypted PDF files on tablets and phones using the Acrobat DC mobile app. To learn more, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices." The Password Security - Settings dialog box opens automatically.

First, you'll set the compatibility level; if you change the compatibility level after entering passwords, you may have to enter them again.

The default compatibility level is compatibility with Acrobat 7.0 or later. If you're sure that all your viewers have Acrobat X or later, you should choose Acrobat X And Later, as it provides the strongest protection. If you think that some of your viewers may still be using Acrobat 6.0, select Acrobat 6.0 And Later. Be aware, however, that this setting may use a lower encryption level.

- 5 Make sure Acrobat 7.0 And Later is selected in the Compatibility menu.
- 6 Select the Require A Password To Open The Document option, and then type Logo1234;^bg for the password.

word Security - Settings			
Document Open			
Require a password to open the o	locument		
Document Open Password:		Best	
This password will be require	d to open the document.		
Permissions			
Restrict editing and printing of th	e document. A password will be required in ord	er to change these permission settings.	
Printing Allowed	High Resolution		
Changes Allowed	Any except extracting pages		
Enable copying of text, images	and other content		
Enable text access for screen re	ader devices for the visually impaired		
Change Permissions Password:		Not Rated	
Options			
Compatibility: Acrobat 7.0 and lat	er 🛛 👻 Encryption Level: 128-bit AES		
Encrypt all document contents			
O Encrypt all document contents ex	cept metadata (Acrobat 6 and later compatible)	,	
O Encrypt only file attachments (Acr	obat 7 and later compatible)		
All contents of the document	will be encrypted and search engines will not b	e able to access the document's metadata.	

Acrobat rates the password's strength. Stronger passwords include both uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and symbols. Longer passwords also tend to be harder to guess. If it's critical that a document remain confidential, use a strong password. You'll share this password with anyone who you want to allow to open the document. Remember that passwords are case-sensitive.

▶ Tip: Always record your passwords in a secure location. If you forget your password, you can't recover it from the document. You might also want to store an unprotected copy of the document in a secure location. Now you'll add a second password that controls who is allowed to change printing, editing, and security settings for the file.

- 7 Under Permissions, select Restrict Editing And Printing Of The Document.
- 8 From the Printing Allowed menu, choose Low Resolution (150 dpi). You can prohibit printing, allow only low-resolution printing, or allow high-resolution printing.
- 9 From the Changes Allowed menu, choose Commenting, Filling In Form Fields, And Signing Existing Signature Fields to allow users to comment on the logo. You can prohibit all changes, some changes, or only prohibit viewers from extracting pages.
- **10** In the Change Permissions Password box, type **Logo5678;^bg**. Your open password and permissions password can't be the same.

Document Open		
Require a password to open the de	ocument	
Document Open Password:		Best
This password will be required	d to open the document.	
Permissions		
Permissions	document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settii	ngs.
Permissions Restrict editing and printing of the Printing Allowed:	e document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settii	ngs.
Permissions Restrict editing and printing of the Printing Allowed: Changes Allowed:	e document. A password will be required in order to change these permission setti Low Resolution (150 dpl) Commenting, filling in form fields, and signing existing signature fields	ngs.
Permissions Restrict editing and printing of the Printing Allowed: Changes Allowed:	e document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settii Low Resolution (150 dpi) Commenting, filling in form fields, and signing existing signature fields and other content	ngs.
Permissions Restrict editing and printing of the Printing Allowed: Changes Allowed: Enable copying of text, images, Chanble text access for screen rea	e document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settii Low Resolution (150 dpi) Commenting, filling in form fields, and signing existing signature fields and other content ader devices for the visually impaired	ngs.

- 11 Click OK to apply your changes.
- 12 In the Confirm Document Open Password dialog box, re-enter the Open Password, Logo1234;^bg. Then click OK.
- **13** Read the alert that warns you that some third-party applications may not honor the security settings in the PDF file, and click OK to clear the alert.
- 14 In the Confirm Permissions Password dialog box, re-enter the Permissions Password, Logo5678;^bg. Then click OK, and click OK again to clear the alert.

The security changes don't take effect until you save the file.

- **15** Choose File > Save to save the security changes.
- **16** Click the Security Settings button (a) in the navigation pane, and then click the Permission Details link. The limitations you set are in effect.

17 Click OK to close the Document Properties dialog box, and then choose File > Close to close the Local_Logo1.pdf file.

ument Properties			
escription Security Fonts Initial Vie	w Custom Advanced		
Document Security			
The document's Security Method rest security restrictions, set the Security N	ricts what can be done to the document. To remove Aethod to No Security.		
Security Method: Password Se	curity	~	Change Settings_
Can be Opened by: Acrobat 7.0 a	nd later		Show Details
All contents of the document are enc metadata.	rypted and search engines cannot access the document's		
Document Restrictions Summary			
Printing:	Allowed		
Changing the Document:	Not Allowed		
Document Assembly:	Not Allowed		
Content Copying:	Not Allowed		
Content Copying for Accessibility:	Allowed		
Page Extraction:	Allowed		
Commenting:	Allowed		
Filling of form fields:	Allowed		
Signing:	Allowed		
Creation of Template Pages:	Allowed		
		1.000	

Opening password-protected files

Now you'll check the security that you've added to your file.

1 Choose File > Open, and open the Local_Logo1.pdf file in the Lesson09/ Finished_Projects folder.

Acrobat prompts you to enter the required password to open the file.

2 Enter the password (Logo1234;^bg), and click OK.

Password			×
<u> </u>	'Local_Logo1.pdf' is protected. Please Enter Password:	enter a Document Open Pas	sword.
		ок	Cancel

Notice that "(SECURED)" has been appended to the filename at the top of the application window.

Now you'll test the permissions password.

- 3 Click the Security Settings button () in the navigation pane, and click the Permission Details link.
- **4** In the Document Properties dialog box, try changing the Security Method from Password Security to No Security.

Acrobat prompts you to enter the Permissions password.

5 Enter the password (Logo5678;^bg), and click OK; then click OK again to confirm that you want to remove security.

Document Properties			×
Description Security Font	Initial View Custom Advanced		
Document Security			
The document's Securit security restrictions, set	Method restricts what can be done to the docu he Security Method to No Security.	ment. To remove	
Security Method:	Password Security		Change Settings
			4
Password		×	
Local_Logo1.pdf	Enter Password: ************************************	Cancel	

All restrictions are now removed from the file.

js		
ord to open the document		
Password:		Not Rates
d will be required to open this document.		
and printing of the document. A password	vill be required in order to change these permission set	tings.
Printing Allowed: Low Resolution (150 d	si)	~
Changes Allowed: Commenting, filling in	form fields, and signing existing signature fields	v
g of text, images, and other content		
cess for screen reader devices for the visua	ly impaired	
cess for screen reader devices for the visua	ly impaired	

- 6 Click OK to close the Document Properties dialog box.
- 7 Choose File > Close, and close the file without saving the changes. Because you aren't saving your changes, the passwords remain in effect next time you open the file.

About digital signatures

Signing a document electronically offers several advantages, not least of which is that you can email the signed document rather than having to fax it or send it by courier. Although digitally signing a document doesn't necessarily prevent people from changing the document, it does allow you to track any changes made after the signature is added and revert to the signed version if necessary. (You can prevent users from changing your document by applying appropriate security to the document.)

With a Document Cloud or Creative Cloud subscription, you can use Adobe Sign (formerly EchoSign) to sign a document or send it out for signatures. Adobe Sign makes the process of signing documents electronically fast and simple.

You can also sign a document using certificates: You must obtain a digital ID from a third-party provider or create a digital ID (self-signed digital ID) for yourself in Acrobat. The digital ID contains a private key that is used to add the digital signature and a certificate that you share with those who need to validate your signature.

For information about Adobe security partners that offer third-party digital IDs and other security solutions, visit the Adobe website at www.adobe.com. To learn how to create and use your own digital ID, see "Using digital IDs" on page 217.

Sending a document for others to sign

The easiest way to invite someone else to sign a document electronically is to use Adobe Sign. You'll prepare a document for Adobe Sign, and then send it out for signatures. If you're working with others, you'll send it to a colleague to sign. However, if you're working alone, you'll need to have an alternate email address to use; you can create free email addresses through services such as Gmail or Yahoo Mail.
Preparing the form

If you send a document without preparing it, Adobe Sign affixes signature and email fields to the bottom of the document. That may be all you need if, for example, you require only confirmation that someone has read a document. However, most forms require signatures or initials in specific locations, and many require other information as well. You'll prepare a form with standard signature blocks for the client (GlobalCorp) and the vendor (Custom Solutions).

 In Acrobat, choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson09/Assets folder, and double-click Statement of Work.pdf.

This document is a contract for services. The signature blocks are on the last page, but they aren't yet set up as form fields. You'll prepare the form before sending it for a signature.

- 2 Click Tools, and then click the Prepare Form tool to open it.
- **3** Make sure Statement of Work.pdf is the selected document, and select This Document Requires Signatures. Then click Start.

Prepare Form	
Se	lect a file or scan a document to begin
	{custom}
	Statement of Work
	Change File
	This document requires signatures
	Start K
	Form field auto detection is ON, Change

Acrobat opens the Prepare Form tool and analyzes the document for existing and likely form fields.

- 4 Click OK when Acrobat reports that no form fields were found.
- **5** Go to page 4 in the document to see the signature lines.
- **6** Select the Signature Field tool (곳) in the Prepare Form toolbar.
- 7 Drag a signature form field above the GlobalCorp signature line.
- 8 Make sure Signer is chosen in the Who Needs To Sign This Field? menu.

Prepare Fo	···· ▶ II ✔ ● ▛ ⊑ @ & ℝ 옷 ⊠ ඕ
C	Statement of Work for GlobalCorp Authorization and Signature
	Upon acceptance of this proposal, GlobalCorp will issue a purchase order orcontracting device incorporating these terms for this engagement.
0	Thank you for the opportunity to submit this proposal.
	GlobalCorp Custom Solutions
4	Field Name: Signature Signature1_es_signersignature Name
	T Signer's Email:
	C Required field All Properties Date

When Sender or one of the Signer options is chosen, the form field becomes an Adobe Sign field. If Anyone is chosen in the Who Needs To Sign This Field? menu, Adobe Sign won't recognize the field. You can add the signer's email address, too.

- 9 Select the Name Field tool (a) in the Prepare Form toolbar, drag a field above the GlobalCorp Name line, and make sure Signer is chosen in the Who Needs to Sign This Field? menu.
- **10** Select the Title Field tool () in the Prepare Form toolbar, drag a form field above the GlobalCorp Title line, and make sure Signer is chosen.

When the recipient signs the signature line, Adobe Sign will automatically populate the Name field with the signer's name. It will also automatically add the current date to the Date field. **11** Select the Date Field tool (i) in the Prepare Form toolbar, drag a form field above the GlobalCorp Date line, and make sure Signer is chosen.

Prepare Form	*	TI	1	۲		×		LM	2	毘	2	
2	Statement of Work for GlobalCorp Authorization and Signature											
3	Upon acceptance device incorpora	e of this ating th	propos ese tern	al, Glob ns for th	balCorp ils engaç	will issu Jement.	e a purc	hase or	derorco	ontracti	ng	
2	Thank you for th	ie oppo	rtunity t	o subm	it this pr	oposal.						
	GlobalCorp					Cus	tom So	lutions				1
	Signatu	re1_es_s	ignersig	nature								
	Signature	2_es_sig	ner:fulln	ame		Sign	nature					
4	Name	le3_es_;s	ignentit	e		Nan	ne					
	Title	te4_es_si	gneridal	e		Title	i .					
	Field Name:					Date	e					
	Who needs t	o sign th	is field?									
	Signer's Ema	il:										
	Required	field	AILP	opertie	8							

You've created the fields for the GlobalCorp signer. Now you'll create the fields for the Custom Solutions representative. Because Custom Solutions is sending the document, you'll choose Sender from the Who Needs To Sign This Field? menu.

- **12** Select the Signature Field tool, and drag a form field above the Custom Solutions signature line.
- **13** Choose Sender from the Who Needs To Sign This Field? menu. You may need to scroll up to see the option.

14 Use the Name Field, Title Field, and Date Field tools to add the remaining fields, choosing Sender from the Who Needs to Sign This Field? menu each time.



Using the Fill & Sign tool

With the Fill & Sign tool, you can fill in a form that doesn't include Acrobat form fields, and you can sign anything anywhere. If you're signing legal documents, you should probably use Adobe Sign or a digital ID to sign your document. But if you're signing a permission slip or other more casual document, the Fill & Sign tool gives you the flexibility to sign without having to create form fields.

To sign a document using the tool, click Fill & Sign in the Tools pane. Then click Sign in the Fill & Sign toolbar, and choose Add Signature or Add Initials (or choose your name or initials, if Acrobat already has your name and initials stored). Type your name, if it's not already there. You can change the style, draw your signature, or even import a scanned image of your signature. Click Apply. The cursor becomes your signature; just click it where you want your signature to appear.

To fill in other fields, select the Add Text tool in the Fill & Sign toolbar, position the cursor on the page, and start typing. Click outside the text box to accept what you've typed.

Download the Fill & Sign app to use the tool on mobile devices. You can use your stylus or finger to add your signature on a phone or tablet.

Sending the document

All the form fields are in place and recognizable by Adobe Sign, so you're ready to send the document. You'll send it to another person to sign for GlobalCorp and to yourself to sign for Custom Solutions. When you enter email addresses in the Adobe Sign dialog box, Adobe Sign sends the document to each address in the order they're entered. That is, the document is sent to the first person to sign, and when it's been signed, the document—including the first person's signature—is sent to the second person to sign, and so on.

1 Click Adobe Sign in the right-hand pane.

Statement of Work; file Edit View Win	df - Adobe Acrobet Pro DC Sow Help	- 0
Home Tools	Statement of Work ×	🗭 🕐 🌲 (
🖺 🕀 🖨	⊠ Q ⊕ ⊕ 4 /4 N ⊕ ⊖ ⊕ 795% · H	i 🐨 🔍 🖉 🧰 🗘 🖾 Share
Prepare Form	N II V O F I I W & B &	🖙 🛱 🖈 🕐 🛛 Preview Close
₽ □ @	Statement of Work for GlobalCorp Authorization and Signature Upon acceptance of this proposal, GlobalCorp will issue a purchase order or contracting device incorporating these terms for this engagement. Thank you for the opportunity to submit this proposal. GlobalCorp GlobalCorp GlobalCorp Signature	ALIGN CENTER ALIGN CENTER CALIGN CENTER CALIGN CENTER CALIGN CENTER CALIGN CENTER CALIGN CENTER CENTER CONTRACTOR CENTER CEN
	Date Date	Signature5_es_sender- Nome6_es_sender-full
		Adobe Sign

- 2 Confirm that the Statement of Work.pdf document is selected.
- **3** Enter the email address of the person who should sign the document first, and press Enter or Return. For this exercise, use a colleague's email address or an alternate address you've created. This person will be prompted to sign the fields that are specified for the Signer.
- **4** Just after the first signer's email address, add the email address from which you're sending the document. This should be the email address associated with your Adobe ID. You'll be prompted to sign the fields specified for the Sender.
- 5 Customize the message if you want to, and then click Continue.

• Note: Acrobat compares the email address you enter with your address book. If it doesn't find the address you enter, it may prompt you to enter an address again. Click the address you already entered to proceed.

Adobe Sign				Close
	Se Get documents signed insta	nd For Signature Using Adobe	Sign	
		Track when the document is viewed and signed. Learn more.		
		To	Add CC 0	
	(CLISEQUE) Manual of Part	Messaga		
	PAN	Statement of Work		
		Please review and complete this document.		
		File(s)	Add Files	
		Statement of Work.pdf		
		Your document will be uploaded to Adobe Sign. Anyone with access to the link can view the document.	Advanced Continue	

Acrobat uses Adobe Sign to send the documents for signature. It uploads the document, and then analyzes the form fields.

- **6** Scroll to page 4 to verify that the form fields are correct.
- 7 Click Send.

Adobe Sign reports that your document has been sent for signature, and that when it's been fully signed, all parties will receive final copies. Adobe Sign also emails you to confirm that the document has been sent for signature.



Signing the document

Adobe Sign sends email to the first address you listed. You'll complete the form for the signer, and then complete it for the sender.

- 1 Log in to the email account whose address you entered first, the one that would be for the GlobalCorp representative. (If you used a colleague's email address, ask them to access their account.)
- 2 Open the message with the subject line "Please sign Statement of Work."
- **3** Read the message, and then click Click Here To Review And Sign Statement of Work.



Adobe Sign opens in your default browser.

4 If prompted, sign out of Adobe Sign, and then click the link in the email message again to open the document as the signer.

5 Click the yellow arrow labeled Start to go to the first field that requires your input.



6 Click the GlobalCorp signature field.

	Statement of Work for GlobalCorp Authorization and Sign	ature					
	Upon acceptance of this proposal, GlobalCorp will issue a purchase order orcontracting device incorporating these terms for this engagement.						
	Thank you for the opportunity to sub	omit this proposal.					
	barn a						
	GlobalCorp	Custom Solutions					
Next	Click here to sign Signature	Signature					

A signature dialog box opens.

7 Type your name. If you want it to look like your manual signature, click Draw, and then draw your signature using a stylus, tablet, or touch screen. You can also create a signature on a mobile device. Click Image if you want to use an image or logo for your signature. (You can use an image of your written signature.) When you're satisfied with your signature, click Apply.



Whether you select Type, Draw, or Image in the signature dialog box, you must type your name so that it is officially recorded in the Adobe Sign transaction. Adobe Sign automatically fills in the Name field with that information.

- 8 Type a title in the Title field, if it hasn't been automatically filled. (If you've created a profile that includes a title, Adobe Sign automatically uses that.)
- 9 Click the Click To Sign button at the bottom of the screen.

Adobe Sign			Ū
Options 🗸		Statement of Work	🦻 Completed 🥑
	Statement of Work for GlobalCorp	gnature	
	Upon acceptance of this propose device incorporating these terms	ıl, GlobalCorp will issue a purchase order or contrac s for this engagement.	ting
	Thank you for the opportunity to	submit this proposal.	_
	GlobalCorp	Custom Solutions	
	* ChloeWB ChloeWB (bcc 19, 2018)		
	Signature ChloeWB	Signature	
	Name Owner	Name	_
	Title	Title	_
	Date	Date	
	I agree to the Terms of Use and Consumer Discl	osure of this document	Click to Sign

Now that the first person has signed, Adobe Sign sends the document to the second email address, which is yours, as the sender.

- **10** Log in to the email address you used to send the document (the email address associated with your Adobe ID).
- **11** Open the message with the subject line that reads "Your signature is required on Statement of Work."

The subject line is different from the one in the email message you opened before, because this one is addressing the document's sender.

- 12 In the message, click Click Here To Review And Sign Statement of Work.
- **13** Adobe Sign opens with the same document. Click the yellow arrow labeled Start.
- The GlobalCorp fields are completed. The Custom Solutions fields are now active.
- **14** Repeat steps 5-9 to sign and complete the Custom Solutions fields and to submit the signed document.

Adobe Sign sends messages to all parties informing them that the document has been signed and filed, and it attaches a PDF file of the final signed document to the message.

15 Close any open documents and Acrobat.

Using digital IDs

Adobe Sign is usually the most convenient secure method of signing a document electronically. However, you can also sign PDF files electronically or certify their contents using certificates and digital IDs.

A digital ID is similar to a driver's license or passport. It proves your identity to people with whom you communicate electronically. A digital ID usually contains your name and email address, the name of the company that issued your digital ID, a serial number, and an expiration date. A digital ID lets you create a digital signature or decrypt a PDF document that has been encrypted. You can create more than one digital ID to reflect different roles in your life.

With a self-signed ID, you share your signature information with other users using a public certificate. (A certificate is a confirmation of your digital ID and contains information used to protect data.) While this method is adequate for most unofficial exchanges, a more secure approach is to obtain a digital ID from a third-party provider.

When you create a self-signed digital ID in Acrobat, you can set the appearance of your digital signature, select your preferred signing method, and determine how digital signatures are verified in the Security preferences. You should also set your preferences to optimize Acrobat for validating signatures before you open a signed document.

Creating a digital ID

To create a digital signature and a digital ID:

- 2 Personalize your digital signature by adding a graphic and specifying which information appears. When you're satisfied, click OK, and then click OK again to return to the Signatures Preferences dialog box.
- 3 Click More in the Identities & Trusted Certificates area of the Digital Signatures Preferences dialog box. Then select Digital IDs in the left pane, and click the Add ID button.

PIEVIEW				
	8		Digitally signed to common name h Date: 2018.12.19 15:35:39 -05'00'	by your here 9
Configure	Graphic			
Show:	O No graphic	Imp	ort Graphic from:	
	Imported graphie	c	File_	
	○ Name			
Configure	Text			
Show:	☑ Name □ I	Location	Distinguished name	🔽 Logo
	☑ Date □ I	Reason	Adobe Version	Labels
Text Prop	erties			
Text	Direction: Auto	Otef	t to right O Right to le	ft
	0100456700			

continues on next page

Using digital IDs (continued)

- 4 Select A New Digital ID I Want To Create Now, click Next, choose where to store your digital ID (Windows only), and enter your personal information.
- 5 Click Next, and then choose a level of security and how you want to use the digital ID (e.g., signatures and data encryption). Click Next, create a password, and click Finish to save the digital ID file.

Signing a document digitally with certificates and digital IDs

To use a digital ID to sign a document:

- 1 In the Tools Center, click Certificates.
- 2 Click Digitally Sign in the Certificates toolbar, and then drag to create a signature field on the page.
- 3 Click Sign Document in the toolbar, select the digital ID you want to use, and click Continue. Enter the password, choose a signature appearance, and enter any required information (such as a reason for signing).
- 4 Click Sign to apply your signature, and click Save to save the signed file. Click Yes or Replace to replace the original file.

To see whether a signature is valid, open the Signatures panel in the navigation pane. Expand the signature line and the Signature Details entry.

Certifying PDF files

You can also certify the contents of a PDF document, which is useful if you want the user to be able to make approved changes to a document. When you certify a document and a user makes approved changes, the certification is still valid. You can certify forms, for example, to guarantee that the content is valid when the user receives the form. As the creator of the form, you can specify what tasks the user can perform. For example, you can specify that readers can fill in the form fields without invalidating the document. However, if a user tries to add or remove a form field or a page, the certification will be invalidated.

To certify a PDF file:

- 1 Click Tools, and then open the Certificates tool.
- 2 Click Certify (Visible Signature) in the Certificates toolbar. In the dialog box that appears, click Drag New Signature Rectangle, and then click OK in the Save As Certified Document dialog box.
- 3 Drag anywhere in the document to create a signature field, and then click Sign Document on the document message bar. Select the digital ID to use. Then click Continue, enter the password, choose an appearance, and enter any additional information. Choose an option from the Permitted Actions After Certifying menu, and then click Sign.

When you open a certified document, you'll see a Certification icon at the left of the message bar. You can click this icon at any time to see certification information for the document.

For more information about creating and using digital IDs, sharing certificates, and certifying PDF files, see Adobe Acrobat Help.

Review questions

- 1 What is Adobe Sign?
- 2 Why would you want to apply password protection to a PDF file?
- **3** Why would you apply permissions protection to a PDF file?

Review answers

- 1 Adobe Sign is an electronic signature service that makes it easier for individuals and businesses to sign documents quickly and securely. If you have a Document Cloud or Creative Cloud subscription, you can use Adobe Sign to send unlimited documents for signatures and to track and manage those documents.
- **2** If you have a confidential document that you don't want others to read, you can apply password protection. Only users with whom you share your password will be able to open the document.
- **3** Permissions protection limits how a user can use or reuse the contents of your Adobe PDF file. For example, you can specify that users cannot print the contents of your file, or copy and paste the contents of your file. Permissions protection allows you to share the content of your file without losing control over how it is used.

10 USING ACROBAT IN A REVIEW CYCLE

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Discover multiple ways to use Acrobat in a document review process.
- Annotate a PDF file with the Acrobat commenting and markup tools.
- View, reply to, search, and summarize document comments.
- Import comments.
- Initiate a shared review.
- Compare versions of a document.



This lesson will take approximately 60 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



Robust commenting tools and collaboration features in Acrobat keep review cycles efficient and make it easy for stakeholders to give feedback.

About the review process

There are several ways to use Acrobat in a document review process. No matter which method you use, the workflow contains some core elements: the review initiator invites participants and makes the document available to them, reviewers comment, and the initiator gathers and works with those comments.

You can share any PDF document by email, on a network server, or on a website, and ask individuals to comment on it using Acrobat Reader, Acrobat Standard, or Acrobat Pro. If you post the document or email it manually, you'll need to keep track of returned comments and merge them as you receive them. If you're requesting feedback from only one or two other people, this might be the most efficient way for you to work. For most reviews, however, you can gather comments more efficiently using a shared review process. Additionally, in a shared review, reviewers can see and respond to each others' comments.

When you initiate an email-based review in Acrobat, you send the PDF file as an email attachment, track responses, and manage the comments you receive. Anyone with Acrobat or Reader can add comments to the PDF file.

When you initiate a shared review in Acrobat, you post the PDF file to Document Cloud, a network folder, WebDAV folder, or SharePoint or Office 365 subsite. Then you email invitations to reviewers, who can access the shared document, add comments, and read others' comments using Acrobat or Reader.

Getting started

In this lesson, you'll add comments to a PDF document, view and manage comments, and initiate a shared review. By definition, collaboration requires you to work with other people. Therefore, many of the exercises in this lesson will be more meaningful if you work through them with one or more colleagues or friends. However, if you are working independently, you can complete the exercises using alternative email addresses, available through web services such as Gmail or Yahoo Mail. (See the legal agreements on their websites for information about how you may use their email accounts.)

First, open the document you'll work with.

- 1 In Acrobat, choose File > Open.
- 2 Navigate to the Lesson10/Assets folder, and double-click the Profile.pdf file.
- **3** Click Comment in the Tools pane.



Adding comments to a PDF document

You can add comments to any PDF file, unless security has been applied to the document to prohibit commenting. In most cases, you'll use the commenting features to provide feedback to a document's author, but you may also find them useful to write notes to yourself as you're reading documents. Acrobat includes several commenting tools. You'll recognize some of them from the physical world. For example, the Sticky Note and Highlight Text tools are electronic versions of physical tools you may have on your desk.

In this exercise, you'll use some of the commenting tools to provide feedback on an article about a fashion designer.

Tip: You can add comments to a PDF file on a tablet or phone using the Acrobat Reader DC mobile app. To learn more, see Lesson 6, "Using Acrobat on Mobile Devices."

About the commenting tools

Acrobat provides several commenting and markup tools, designed for different commenting tasks. Most comments include two parts: the markup or icon that appears on the page, and a text message that appears in a pop-up note when you select the comment. Markup and icon tools are available in the Comment toolbar when the Comment tool is open. For detailed information about using each tool, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

	Comment	Ę	Ø	T	Ŧ	Ŧp	$T_{\! \approx}$	Т	T	0		Ք.	G-	47-	
--	---------	---	---	---	---	----	------------------	---	---	---	--	----	----	-----	--

- Sticky Note tool (P) Create sticky notes, just as you would in the physical world. Click wherever you want the note to appear. Sticky notes are useful when you want to make overall comments about a document or a section of a document, rather than commenting on a particular phrase or sentence.
- **Highlight Text tool** (∠) Highlight text. To add a comment, double-click the highlight on the page.
- **Underline Text tool** (\underline{T}) Indicate which text should be underlined.
- **Strikethrough Text tool** (\underline{T}) Indicate which text should be deleted.
- **Replace Text tool** (H) Indicate which text should be removed, and type the text that should replace it.
- **Insert Text tool** (T_∞) Add text at the insertion point. As with all the text commenting tools, your comments don't affect the text in the PDF document, but they make your intention clear.
- Add Text tool (T) Type text that appears directly on the page; like other comments, it won't change the document itself. You can move it, but unlike a pop-up note, you can't hide it.
- Add Text Box tool (□) Create a box that contains text, positioned anywhere on the page, and at any size. It remains visible on the page.
- **Pencil tool** (𝖉) − Draw freeform lines and shapes on the page.
- **Eraser tool** (*(*) Erase lines, or portions of lines, that you've drawn.
- **Stamp tool** (a) Use a virtual rubber stamp to approve a document, mark it confidential, or perform several other common stamping tasks. You can also create custom stamps for your own purposes.
- Attach File tool () Attach a file, in any format, to the PDF document.
- Record Audio tool (S) Clarify your feedback with an audio recording. The Record Audio tool is hidden beneath the Attach File tool. To record audio, you must have a built-in or removable microphone on your system.

Tip: To create a custom stamp, click the Stamp tool, and choose Custom Stamps > Create. Then select the image file you want to use. Drawing tools (<) – Use the drawing tools to emphasize areas on the page or communicate your thoughts visually, especially when reviewing graphical documents. You can use the Line (=), Arrow (=), Rectangle (□), Oval (○), Text callout (=), Polygon (○), Cloud (○), and Connected Lines (◇) tools. You can expand the drawing tools to include all of them on the Comment toolbar.

Commenting in Acrobat Reader

Acrobat Reader DC includes all the commenting and markup tools you have available in Acrobat. The Acrobat Reader mobile app provides several commenting and markup tools: the Sticky Note, Highlight Text, Strikethrough, Underline, and Pencil tools. When a PDF has been shared for review, Document Cloud provides the same commenting tools as the Acrobat Reader mobile app.

Adding sticky notes

You can attach a sticky note anywhere in a document. Because notes can easily be moved, they are best suited to comments about the overall content or layout of a document, rather than to specific phrasing. You'll add a sticky note on the first page of this document.

- 1 Select the Sticky Note tool (🗐) in the Comment toolbar.
- 2 Click anywhere on the page.

A sticky note appears where you clicked. In the right-hand pane, the name in the Identity panel of the Acrobat Preferences dialog box automatically appears on the note, as well as the time.





• Note: Text callouts let you specify the area you're commenting on without obscuring it. Callout markups have three parts: a text box, a knee line, and an endpoint line. Drag handles to resize each part and position it exactly where you want it. **4** Right-click or Control-click the Sticky Note dialog box, and choose Properties from the pop-up menu.



Tip: You can also change the appearance of comments using the Color Picker, Line Width, and Text Properties tools in the Comment toolbar.

- 5 Click the Appearance tab, and then click the Color swatch.
- 6 Select a blue swatch. The sticky note changes color automatically.

	Appearance	General	Review History		
con:			Color		
Checkmark			Opacity	: 100%	
✓ Insert Text					_0
O Circle					
Comment					

7 Click the General tab and then, in the Author box, type **Reviewer A**.

	Sticky Note Properties
	Appearance General Review History
Author:	Reviewer A
Subject:	Sticky Note
Modified:	12/13/18, 11:29:50 AM
cked 🗆 M	ake Properties Default

You can change the name attached to a comment. You may want to do that, for example, if you are using someone else's computer.

8 Click OK.

The contents of your note are displayed in the right-hand pane. The blue sticky note is closed on the page. To view it, just roll the cursor over the sticky note icon.



Emphasizing text

Use the Highlight Text tool to emphasize specific text in a document. After highlighting the text, you can also add a message. You'll make a comment using the Highlight Text tool in this document.

- 1 Scroll to page 3 in the document.
- **2** Select the Highlight Text tool (\mathscr{D}) in the Comment toolbar.
- 3 Drag the pointer over "ital" at the bottom of the second paragraph on the page. The text is highlighted in yellow.
- 4 A comment message box opens in the comments list.
- 5 Type bad line break.
- 6 Click Post to save your comment.

In her family, the idea that one would pursue a career in fashion was inconceivable. "That was way out there, beyond the realm of possibility," Ritter says. "The attitude was, why not be a sing- er or an actress while you're at it?" It just wasn't	Reviewer A 11:30 AM Looks good so far. I'll look again when it's finished.
lone. Instead, one became a doctor or a lawyer. So she moved to Paris to study economics. After	PAGE 3 1 ~
completing her degree, she found work with a record company as a music publicist and went about creating a life for herself in the French cap-	MillieP 11:33 AM ···· bad line break
That's where she met and fell in love with the American man who she later followed to New	Post

Marking text edits

You can clearly communicate which text should be deleted, inserted, or replaced using the text-editing tools. You'll suggest some text changes to the profile article.

- 1 Scroll to page 2 of the document.
- 2 Select the Replace Text tool (🗐) in the Comment toolbar.
- **3** Select the words "Self reinvention" at the top of the page.

The original text is crossed out, and an insertion point appears. A comment field is created in the comments list.

4 Type **Self-reinvention** to replace the original text, and click Post.



5 Select the Insert Text tool (T_∞) in the Comment toolbar. Then click an insertion point after "dress" in the last paragraph in the right column.

An insertion point icon appears in the original text, and a comment field appears in the comments list.

6 Type a dash (-) to indicate that a hyphen should be inserted in the text, and click Post.



- **7** Select the Strikethrough tool (\underline{T}) in the Comment toolbar.
- 8 Select the words "Which raises a really good question:" in the second paragraph in the right column.



A red line appears through the text, indicating deletion.

- **9** Go to page 5, and select the Underline tool (\underline{T}) .
- **10** Select the word "Emmanuelle" at the bottom of the left column. The word is underlined in the PDF file.
- 11 Type Italicize movie title in the comment field open in the comments list.

buted in 2006, with a solo show at Bryant Park.	PAGE 3	1 ~
Five years and dozens of collections later (including Piplette, her label for Urban Outfit- ters), she continues to be inspired by all things French—and then some. She's a huge film buff,	MillieP 11:35 AM	
especially when it comes to French New Wave cinema For the Fall-Winter 2011 collection she	PAGE 5	1 ~
drew inspiration from the 1974 erotic French film Emmanuelle It was as much about explor-	MillieP 12:03 PM.	
		Post

12 Choose File > Save As. Save the file in the Lesson10/Finished_Projects folder, and name the file Profile_review.pdf.

Working with comments

You can view comments on the page, in a list, or in a summary. You can import, export, search, and print comments. You can also reply to comments if you're participating in a shared review or will be returning the PDF file to a reviewer in an email-based review. In this exercise, you'll import comments from reviewers, sort comments, show and hide comments, search for comments, and change their status.

Importing comments

If you use a shared review process, comments are imported automatically. However, if you're using an email-based review process or collecting comments informally, you can import comments manually. You'll import comments from three reviewers into the draft of the designer profile.

- 1 With the Profile_review.pdf file open, notice the comments in the right-hand pane. The only comments in the document are the ones you added.
- 2 From the options menu (···) in the right-hand pane, choose Import Data File.
- 3 Navigate to the Lesson10/Assets/Comments folder.
- 4 Shift-click to select the following files:
 - profile_Art_Director.pdf
 - profile_Linda.pdf
 - profile_Stan.fdf
- 5 Click Open (Windows) or Select (macOS).



6 Click OK or Yes if you see a message that comments were made on a different version of the document.

Two of the documents are PDF files with comments included; the FDF file is a data file that contains comments that a reviewer exported.

Acrobat imports the comments and displays them in the comments list.

Viewing comments

The comments list includes every comment in the document, with the comment author's name, the type of comment, and the comment itself.

- 1 Scroll through the comments list. By default, comments are listed in the order they appear in the document.
- **2** Above the comments list, click the Sort Comments button (2), and then choose Author.



Acrobat rearranges the comments so that they are categorized by author name, with authors appearing in alphabetical order.

3 Click the Art Director's comment about a hyphen. When you click it, Acrobat moves the page to the comment location so that you can see it in context.

► Tip: As a reviewer, you can export comments to a data file (named with an .fdf extension) to reduce file size, especially if you're submitting comments by email. To export comments, choose Export All To Data File or Export Selected To Data File from the options menu in the righthand pane when the Comment tool is open.



You can add check marks to indicate that you've read a comment, replied to it, discussed it with someone, or anything else that is meaningful to you.

5 Click the Filter Comments button(♡) above the comments list, select Unchecked, and click Apply.

The comment you checked is no longer listed, but it remains in the document. You can use the filter options to declutter the comments list and focus on the comments you want to work with, whether you want to see only text edits, comments by a particular reviewer, or comments labeled with a particular color.

Reviewer A	Art Direc	tor	da
MillieP	tan		
TYPES			
Sticky Note	Highlight		
Inserted Text	Striketh	rough	
Underline			
CHECKED			
Checked	Unchecked		
COLOR			
-			

6 Click the Filter Comments button again, and click Clear All.

All the comments are listed again.

7 Above the comments list, click the Search button (Q), and then type **logo** in the Search box.

Only one comment appears in the list, the only comment that includes the word "logo." You can use the Search box to search for any text in comments.

- 8 Select the comment. A reply field opens beneath the comment.
- **9** Type **Legal says the logo is required, per Janet**. Then click Post. Your name appears next to the reply, which is indented to show its position in the thread.



10 With the last comment still selected, right-click or Control-click the comment, and choose Set Status > Completed.

logo	(1) × 2	Y
Art Director		6 ~
Art Dire	ector Jul 25	
MillieP	12:16 PM	
Legal sa per Jane	ays the logo is require at.	ed,
Legal sa per Jane	the logo is require at. Copy Text	ed,
Legal sa per Jane Add a reply.	tys the logo is require st. Copy Text Edit Delete	ed,
Legal sa per Jane Add a reply.	tys the logo is require et. Copy Text Edit Delete Set Status	nd, ✓ None
Legal sa per Jane Add a reply.	tys the logo is require t. Copy Text Edit Delete Set Status Properties Add Checkmark	ed, ✓ None Accepted Cancelled
Legal sa per Jane Add a reply.	tys the logo is require t. Copy Text Edit Delete Set Status Properties Add Checkmark	ed, ✓ None Accepted Cancelled Complete

You can set the status of each comment for your own records and to show reviewers how their comments were handled.

11 Close the document, saving the changes if you like.

• Note: The reviewer will see your reply only if you are using a shared review process or if you email a saved copy of the PDF file to the reviewer.

Summarizing comments

You can create a summary of comments, either as a list of only the comments, or as the document with comments referenced. From the options menu above the comments list, choose Create Comment Summary. In the Create Comment Summary dialog box, select the layout and other options for your summary. Then click Create Comment Summary. Acrobat creates and opens a separate PDF file with the comments summary layout you selected. You can view the summary onscreen or print it if you prefer to work with paper.

Initiating a shared review

In a shared review, you post the PDF to a common server, such as Document Cloud, and track reviewers' participation; all comments are automatically consolidated in the review version of the PDF. All participants can view and respond to each others' comments. Using a shared review is an effective way to let reviewers resolve conflicting opinions, identify areas for research, and develop creative solutions during the review process.

For this exercise, you'll need to invite at least one other person to participate. If you are working on your own, you may want to create an alternative email address using a free web service such as Gmail or Yahoo Mail.

Inviting reviewers

You'll invite reviewers to comment on the document. Your file will be uploaded to Document Cloud, where the people you invite will have access to it.

- 1 Decide who you will invite to participate in the review, and make sure you have their email addresses. If you are working on this lesson alone, create an alternative email address that you can send an invitation to.
- 2 Choose File > Open.
- 3 Navigate to the Lesson10/Assets folder, and double-click the Registration.pdf file.
- 4 Click Send For Review in the Tools pane.
- 5 Type an email address in the Invite People section of the right-hand pane, and then press Enter or Return. You can enter more than one email address. To access your address book, click the Address Book button in the email field.

Instead of entering email addresses here, you could choose to email a link to reviewers. If you're asking for comments from numerous people subscribed to an email list, for example, it's more efficient to send a link once to the entire list. To do that, you'd click Get Link, and then Create Link; when Acrobat has loaded the PDF to Document Cloud, click Copy Link, and then paste that link into an email message. You don't need a link when you're creating a shared review.

- **6** Under the Recipients Can heading, make sure Review File is selected.
- 7 Customize the message for reviewers, if you want to.

If you want to set a deadline for reviewers, click Set Deadline, select a date, and decide whether to send a reminder. For this exercise, leave Set Deadline unselected.

Instead of sharing the PDF on Document Cloud, you can send a PDF to reviewers as an email attachment. To do so, click Send As Attachment, select either Default Email Application or Webmail, click Continue, enter any information required, and then send the messages from your email account. In an emailbased review, you'll need to gather and consolidate comments separately.

8 Click Send.

SHARE	×
Registration.pdf	Add Files
Invite People	~
Q sandy4ever@xyz.net	
Your file will be uploaded to Docu Each person will receive a unique with access to the link can view th	ment Cloud. link. Anyone ne file.
Chloewb@xyz.net ×	
RECIPIENTS CAN:	
O View file	(i)
Review file	í
Name	
Registration	
Message	
Please review this document	
Set deadline	
	Send

Acrobat copies the document to Document Cloud, and it sends email to reviewers using your default email application. Acrobat opens the review version of the document from Document Cloud, so that you can see who's opened the document, as well as read comments and interact with reviewers.

9 Click OK when Acrobat reports that you're in the review version of the file. Close the PDF in Acrobat.

Participating in a shared review

You or your colleague will participate in the shared review, adding comments about the document.

- 1 If you're working alone, open the email invitation you sent to an alternative email address. If you're working with a colleague or friend, ask them to open the email invitation you sent and to follow the steps below.
- 2 Click Review.



The document opens in Document Cloud in your default browser.

- **3** Add several comments to the PDF file using the commenting tools. If you use the @ symbol to address someone in a comment, they'll receive a notification in Acrobat.
- **4** When you've finished reviewing the document, click Done, and then click I'm Finished to confirm that you're done.

Document Cloud displays the Home view. The review request is listed in the To Do section of your Home view.

Tracking review comments

You can keep track of reviewers' comments and reply to comments yourself from within Acrobat. You'll track the progress in your version of the document.

- 1 In Acrobat, click Home to see the Home view, if you're not there already.
- **2** Click For Review in the Shared area on the left. The Registration PDF is listed. (You may need to close Acrobat and open it again to see the file.)

Note: Though you're using a different email address, Acrobat may recognize your Creative Cloud account, so it may recognize that you're commenting on your own document. **3** Select the Registration PDF. Information about the review process appears on the right. You can see who you invited, who's commented, and when the last activity in the document occurred.

Home Tools	& Registration.pdf (Q, Search	💷 🖗 🔍
Recent Scans	Shared F	or Review		E =	
FILES		NAME	SENDER	STATUS	
My Computer Document Cloud	ladii	Registration	You	1 of 1 commented	q=
Add an Account					
For Viewing					Registration REVIEW + Last Activity Today, 12.28 PM
For Review					Please review this document.
For Signature					1 Participant 🙆 ~
					Add Reviewers
					Lisa INTIVIOR • Last accessed today, 12.28

4 Double-click the Registration document to open it. Comments you made in the document in Acrobat and any comments made in Document Cloud appear in the comments list.

• Note: Comments are synced as long as Acrobat can access Document Cloud.

5 Close the PDF file, but leave Acrobat open.

Using a network folder for a shared review

By default, Acrobat copies PDFs for review to Document Cloud. But you can also host a shared review on a network folder, WebDAV folder, SharePoint workspace or subsite, or Office 365 site.

To host a shared review on a network folder, first change your preferences: Choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), select Reviewing on the left, deselect Share For Review Using the Adobe Document Cloud, and click OK. Click Send For Review in the Tools pane, and then click Send For Shared Commenting in the Send For Review toolbar. Follow the steps in the wizard to share the file on your server and invite reviewers.

Comparing versions of documents

In Acrobat Pro, you can see what's changed between two versions of a PDF document. This can be particularly helpful if you're working on a document that multiple people have edited. You'll compare the initial version of the Facilities.pdf with the edited version.

- 1 Choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson10/Assets folder, and double-click the Facilities.pdf file.
- 2 Click Tools to open the Tools Center, and then click Compare Files to open it.

Acrobat prompts you to choose the files you want to compare. The open document is selected in the Old File column. You'll select the file to compare it to.

- **3** Under New File, choose Browse for File from the Select File pop-up menu. Then navigate to the Lesson10/Assets folder, and double-click the Facilities_ edited.pdf file.
- 4 Click Settings.

You can compare specific pages, and you can tell Acrobat what sort of document you're working with. By default, Acrobat compares all the pages in the document, and it detects what kind of document it is.



5 Click OK to accept the default settings. Then click Compare.

Acrobat displays a progress bar as it compares the documents. When it's made its analysis, it opens the Compare Report, which summarizes and identifies the differences between the files. The summary reports the number and kinds of changes in the document.

6 Click Go To First Change (Page 2).



Acrobat displays page 2 in each of the files and identifies the change; in this case, text was deleted.



7 Click Next Change in the Compare Files toolbar. Acrobat displays the next change in the document. It's an image that was replaced.



8 Continue clicking Next Change until you've seen all the changes in the document.

You can use options in the Compare Files toolbar to view one document at a time or to see both at once (the default), to filter the kinds of changes Acrobat identifies, and to see the summary again. You can also save the report to document the changes.

9 Close all open documents.

Review questions

- 1 How do you add comments to a PDF document?
- 2 How can you consolidate comments made by several reviewers?
- 3 What are some benefits of a shared review process?

Review answers

- You can add comments to a PDF using any of the commenting and markup tools in Acrobat. Open the Comment tool to see all the tools available in the Comment toolbar. To use a tool, select it, and then select the text you want to edit, draw your markup, or click to create a sticky note.
- **2** To consolidate review comments, open the original PDF file that you sent out for review, and then choose Import Data File from the Comments List panel menu. Select the PDF or FDF files that reviewers returned to you, and click Select. Acrobat imports all the comments into the original document.
- 3 In a shared review process, you post the PDF document to Document Cloud or another network folder, and then invite reviewers to make their comments. When reviewers post comments, they can be seen by all other reviewers, so everyone can respond to each other. Using a shared review is an effective way to let reviewers resolve conflicting opinions, identify areas for research, and develop creative solutions during the review process. You can easily track which reviewers have opened and reviewed the document.
1 WORKING WITH FORMS IN ACROBAT

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Create an interactive PDF form.
- Add form fields, including text boxes, radio buttons, and action buttons.
- Distribute a form.
- Track a form to determine its status.
- Learn how to collect and compile form data.
- Validate and calculate form data.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.

	The form	1	
DIEN	Inank you jor atte We'd love to hear h back next year!	naing our conjerence how we did and hope i	inis year. to see you
. What were your areas of inte	rest this year? <i>(check all t</i>	hat apply)	
Improving Public Trans	sportation		
Road Sharing Planning			
Future Live / Work Are Community File	a Projects		
Other: Community Ed	lucation		
. Do you think you will attend t	future events?		
Yes No			
Environmentally Responsible Act	Cessible Transportation	Uning Options	Accommodations
4 -	4 💽	5 💽	5 -
Any other feedback for us?			
Loved the location this year	arl		
. Please provide your cell phon	e number if you'd like to r	eceive future announcer	nents via text (optional):
(555) 857-6309			
Start over			
			THANK YOUU
			THANK TOU!

You can convert any Acrobat document, including a scanned paper file, into an interactive form for online distribution, tracking, and collection.

Getting started

In this lesson, you'll prepare a feedback form for the fictitious Meridien conference. You'll convert an existing PDF document into an interactive form and use the form tools in Acrobat to add form fields that users can complete online. Then you'll distribute the form, track it, collect the responses, and analyze the data, all using tools within Acrobat.

Converting PDF files to interactive PDF forms

With Acrobat, you can create interactive PDF forms from documents you've created in other applications, such as Microsoft Word or Adobe InDesign, or scanned in from existing paper forms. You will start by opening a flat form that has already been converted to PDF. You will then use the form tools to convert it to an interactive form.

 Start Acrobat. Then choose File > Open, and navigate to the Lesson11/Assets folder. Open the MeridienFeedback.pdf file.

The PDF document contains the text for the form, but Acrobat doesn't recognize any form fields in the document yet.

- **2** If the Prepare Form tool is not in the Tools pane, click Tools to open the Tools Center, and then click Add under Prepare Form.
- **3** Click MeridienFeedback to return to the form, and then click Prepare Form in the Tools pane.



4 Make sure the MeridienFeedback.pdf file is selected, that This Document Requires Signatures is not selected, and that form field auto detection is on. Then click Start. (If form field auto detection is off, click Change, and then turn it on.)

Prepare Form	Close
	۲
Select a file or scan a d	ocument to begin
F88C 010	
	D4
	E
	P
MeridienFeedback Change File	Scan a document
This document requ	ires signatures
	÷
Start	0
Form field auto detection	i is ON Change

Acrobat analyzes the document and adds interactive form fields. You can inspect the document to ensure that Acrobat added form fields appropriately, and you can add fields manually where necessary.

Acrobat lists the form fields it added in the Fields panel on the right. The Prepare Form toolbar and the right-hand pane display the tools available for editing forms.

Prepare Form	k	TI	¥ (•	0	ŌE	A	齓	Ċ	*	0	Preview	lose
		1 ALL 774 175 177 177 177 177 177 177 177	CONFE atuk you fer a id leve to hes in met your? ment (check a met a in ted ental atuke attending anaportation	RENCE treating our are show or did as that apply that apply the apply t	FEED offernae sha ad hope to to	BACK	(A)				ALIGN	CENTER CENTER CENTER DISTRIBUTE E OF CO E OF CO E OF CO CENTER CE	
	base provide your cell	phone numbe	r if you'd like t	a receive future a	mounceme	its vie licht i	(unterne)				III under	fined	
		2				THAN	K YOU				Dis	tribute	1

• Note: If you see different tools, choose Revert To Acrobat Form from the More pop-up menu in the righthand pane. Acrobat provides different tools to prepare a document for Adobe Sign than for your own distribution.

Types of form fields

You can include the following types of fields in a PDF form you create in Acrobat:



A. Text field B. Check box C. Radio button D. List box E. Dropdown list F. Button G. Image field H. Date field I. Digital signature J. Barcode

- Barcodes encode the input from selected fields and display it as a visual pattern that can be interpreted by decoding software or hardware (available separately).
- Buttons initiate an action on the user's computer, such as opening a file, playing
 a sound, or submitting data to a web server. You can customize buttons with
 images, text, and visual changes triggered by moving or clicking a mouse.
- Check boxes present yes-or-no choices for individual items. If the form contains
 multiple check boxes, users can typically select as many of these as they want.
- Date fields let the user type a date or select one from a pop-up calendar.
- Dropdown lists let the user either choose an item from a menu or type in a value.
- **Digital signature fields** let the user electronically sign a PDF document with a digital signature.
- Image fields let the user insert a photo or illustration.
- List boxes display a list of options the user can select. You can set a form field property that enables the user to Shift-click, Ctrl-click, or Command-click to select multiple items on the list.
- **Radio buttons** present a group of choices from which the user can select only one item. All radio buttons with the same name work together as a group.
- **Text fields** let the user type in text, such as name, address, email address, or phone number.

You can edit the form fields Acrobat creates. You'll edit the field marked "undefined" to give it a useful name and tooltip.

5 Double-click the field labeled "undefined" to edit it.

6 In the Text Field Properties dialog box, click the General tab. Then type Other text in both the Name and the Tooltip boxes, and click Close.

1.	What	t were your areas of interest this year? (check all that apply)							
	Improving Public Transportation								
	Road Sharing Planning								
	г.	Future Live / Work Area Projects							
	0	Other:							
		Ň							
Text F	ield Pro	perties ×							
G	eneral	Appearance Position Options Actions Format Validate Calculate							
		Name: Other text							
		Tooltip: Other text							
1.	What	t were your areas of interest this year? (check all that apply)							
	1	Improving Public Transportation							
	D	Road Sharing Planning							
	г.	Future Live / Work Area Projects							
	0	Other Other text							

Adding form fields

You can use the form tools in Acrobat to add form fields to any document. Each form field has a name, which should be unique and descriptive; you'll use this name when you collect and analyze data, but it does not appear on the form the user sees. You can add tooltips and labels to help users understand how to complete form fields.

Adding text fields

Acrobat identified some fields, but missed others. You'll add a text field for a cell phone number. Text fields enable users to enter information, such as their name or telephone number, on a form.

1 Select the Text Field tool (Ⅲ) in the Prepare Form toolbar. Your pointer becomes a text box.

Note: If a document has been passwordprotected to prevent editing, you must know the password to add or edit fields. **Tip:** To position fields exactly where you want them, use the Position tab in the field's Properties dialog box. To change the width, height, or position of multiple fields at once, select them, and make the change in the Properties dialog box for one of the fields. You can also lock the width and height of a field so you don't accidentally resize it as you move it.

- **2** Click just below "5. Please provide your cell phone number" to place the text field.
- **3** Type **cell phone number** in the Field Name box. Do not select Required Field, because this is an optional field.
- 4 Click All Properties to change the properties for the field.

5. Please provide your cell phone number	5. Please provide your cell phone number
	Field Name:
	Cell phone number

- 5 In the Text Field Properties dialog box, click the Format tab.
- 6 Choose Special from the Select Format Category pop-up menu. Then select Phone Number, and click Close.

	Appearance Position Options Actions Format Validate Calculate
Selec	t format category: Special 🗸
Spe	cial Options
1000	
	75 6 4
	Zip Code + 4
	Phone Number
	Social Security Number
	Arbitrary Mask
	Use the Special format category to set up sustom.
	Constant of the second se
	formatting and to display phone numbers, zip/postal codes, and social security numbers.
	formating and to display phone numbers, zip/postal codes, and social security numbers.
	formating and to display phone numbers, zip/postal codes, and social security numbers.

Now the field will accept phone numbers, but no other text.

7 Drag the right edge of the text field to make it longer.

5. Please provide your cell phone	number if you'd like to receive future
cell phone number	

Specifying an answer format

You can use special formatting to restrict the type of data that is entered into a text field or to automatically convert data into a specific format. For example, you can set a zip code field to accept only numbers, or a date field to accept only a specific date format. And you can restrict numerical entries to numbers within a certain range.

To restrict the format for a text field, open its properties. Click the Format tab, select the format category, and then select the appropriate option for your field.

Adding a multiline text field

The next field you'll add is for additional feedback. Someone completing the form might type just a few words or a complete paragraph, so you'll create a text field that supports multiple lines.

- 1 Select the Text Field tool in the Prepare Form toolbar.
- **2** Click below "4. Any other feedback for us?" and drag a text box large enough to contain multiple lines of text.
- **3** Type **other feedback** in the Field Name box. This is another optional field, so do not select Required Field.
- **4** Double-click the text field to edit its properties.

		other feedback
Field Name:		
other feedback		you'd like to receive future announcements via text (optional

- 5 In the Text Field Properties dialog box, click the Options tab.
- **6** Select Multi-line and Scroll Long Text.
- 7 Select Limit Of _ Characters, and type **350** for the limit.
- 8 Click Close.

General	Appeara	nce	Position	Options	Actions	Format	Validate	Calculate
Ali	qnment:	Lef	t v					
Defau	ult Value:			<u>.</u>				
			ield is use Password	d for file s	election			
	I		heck spel Aulti-line icroll long	text	atting			
			imit of Comb of	350 0	charact	ers ters		

9 Click Preview in the Prepare Form toolbar.

In Preview mode, form fields appear as they will to the person completing the form.



10 Type a few sentences into the other feedback field to see how the text wraps. You can also enter a phone number in the cell phone number field.

-	iny other reeuback for us:	
C	Great job! We had a wonderful time.	
P	lease provide your cell phone number if	vou'd like to receive future announcements via text (optional):
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1	300) 456-7890	

Adding radio buttons

The second question on the feedback form requires a yes-or-no answer. You'll create radio buttons for that question. Radio buttons let the user select one—and only one— option from a set of options.

- 1 If you're in Preview mode, click Edit in the Prepare Form toolbar to return to Form Editing mode.
- **2** Select the Radio Button tool (**③**) in the Prepare Form toolbar.
- **3** Click over the circle next to the word "Yes" after question 2.
- 4 Select Required Field.
- **5** Type **Yes** in the Radio Button Choice box.
- **6** Type **attend again** in the Group Name box.
- **7** Click Add Another Button at the bottom of the dialog box. Your pointer becomes a box again.

2. [Do you think you will attend future	e events?
	attend Yes • No	
	Radio Button Choice: (j)	
	Yes	
	Group Name:	
	attend again ✓ Image: Construction of the second	
	A Warning: 1 button in group. At least 2 buttons needed.	
	Add Another Button	

• Note: All radio buttons in a set need to have the same group name.

- 8 Click the circle next to "No."
- **9** Type **No** in the Radio Button Choice box, and confirm that the group name is "attend again" and that Required Field is selected. Then click outside the dialog box to close it.

2. Do you think yo	u will attend futu	re events?
attend Yes	attend No	
►	Radio Button Choice: (i)	
	Group Name: attend again	~
	Add Another Button	<u>All Properties</u>

10 Click Preview in the Prepare Form toolbar. For the second question, click Yes, and then click No. Notice that you can select only one radio button at a time.



Adding a dropdown list

Dropdown lists let users choose an option from a pop-up menu or, if the form creator has allowed it, type in a value. You'll add dropdown lists for the third question, which asks participants to rate their experience.

- 1 Click Edit in the Prepare Form toolbar to return to Form Editing mode.
- 2 Select the Dropdown List tool () in the Prepare Form toolbar.
- 3 Click beneath "Environmentally Responsible" to create the pop-up menu.
- **4** Name the field **environment**.

5 Click All Properties.

3. How would you rate	your
•	
Environmentally Responsible	
environment -	
Field Name:	
environment	
Required field	All Properties

6 Click the Options tab, and then type -- in the Item field, and click Add.

Dr	opdown P	roperties							×
	General	Appearance	Position	Options	Actions	Format	Validate	Calculate	
		ltem: 🕞				Add			

Acrobat adds -- to the menu.

- **7** Type **1** in the Item field, and click Add.
- 8 Repeat step 7 for the numbers 2–5, so that the menu includes the following options: --, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.
- **9** Select the first option (--) to make it the default. This is the option that will appear on the form when it's first opened.



10 Click Close.

- **11** Resize the field to match the gray box on the form.
- **12** Repeat steps 2–11 to add dropdown lists for the other three ratings categories. Name them **transportation**, **dining**, and **accommodations**.
- 13 Click Preview in the Prepare Form toolbar.



14 Select a rating from each menu to see how users will experience the form.

Using image buttons

Sometimes you want form users to provide a photo or illustration. For example, you may want to include an image field in a contest submission form, an application form, or a form that documents an issue or incident. In Acrobat DC, it's just as easy to create an image field as it is to create any other field. Select the Image Field tool (i) in the Prepare Form toolbar, click on the page to add the field, and then customize its appearance. When someone clicks the field in a form, they'll be prompted to browse for an image.



Adding an action button

Buttons let users perform an action, such as playing a movie file, going to a different page, or submitting a form. You'll create a reset button that will clear the form fields so the user can start over.

- 1 Click Edit in the Prepare Form toolbar to return to Form Editing mode.
- **2** Select the Button tool (**IDE**) in the Prepare Form toolbar.
- **3** Click in the bottom left corner of the form to create the button.
- 4 Type **Reset** in the Field Name box, and then click All Properties.
- **5** Click the Options tab.



6 Type **Start over** in the Label box.

General App	earance Position Options	Actions
Layout:	Label only	* Advanced
Behavior.	Invert ~	
Icon and	Label	
State:		

The field name is used to collect and analyze data, but does not appear on the form itself. The label, however, appears in the field when the user is completing the form.

- **7** Click the Actions tab.
- 8 Choose Mouse Up from the Select Trigger menu, and then choose Reset A Form from the Select Action menu. Click Add.

utton Properties		
General Appea	ance Position Options Actions	
Add an Act	on	
Select Tri	gger: Mouse Up 🗸	
Select Ac	tion: Reset a form	~
		Add

When the user clicks the button and releases the mouse (Mouse Up), the form will reset.

9 Click OK in the Reset A Form dialog box to reset the selected fields. By default, all form fields are selected.

ransportation	Select All
✓ other feedback	
environment	Deselect All
✓ dining	
cell phone number	
✓ attend again	
accommodations	
Road Sharing Planning	
✓ Other text	
☑ Other	
Improving Public Transportation	
Future Live Work Area Projects	
< >	

- **10** Click the Appearance tab.
- **11** Click the Border Color swatch, and select a dark shade of red. In macOS, deselect Transparent. Then close the Colors panel.
- 12 Click the Fill Color swatch, select a lighter shade of red, and then close the panel.
- **13** Choose Beveled from the Line Style menu, Medium from the Line Thickness menu, and white for the Text Color.

Button Properties ×
General Appearance Position Options Actions
Borders and Colors
Border Color: 🔳 Line Thickness: Medium 🗸
Fill Color: Line Style: Beveled V
Text
Font Size: 12 V Text Color:
Font: Helvetica Bold 🗸

The button will appear with a red background, dark red outline, and white text. The beveled line will make it appear to be three-dimensional.

- **14** Click Close to close the Button Properties dialog box.
- **15** Click Preview. Select options for a few questions, and then click the Start Over button you created. The fields reset.

5. Please provide your cell phone number	if you'd <mark>l</mark> ike
Start over	

- **16** Click Edit to return to Form Editing mode.
- 17 Choose File > Save As. In the Save As PDF dialog box, name the file MeridienFeedbackForm.pdf, and save it to the Lesson11/Assets/Finished_ Projects folder.

Distributing forms

After you have designed and created your form, you can distribute it in several different ways. If you have an email account, you'll send the feedback form to yourself, and then collect the response in email. You'll use the tools in Acrobat to distribute the form.

- 1 Click Distribute in the right-hand pane.
- 2 Click Save if you are prompted to save.
- **3** In the Distribute Form dialog box, select Email, and then click Continue. Click Yes if you are prompted to clear the form before distributing it.

	Distribute F	orm		×
	How w	rould y	ou like to distribute the form?	
🖶 dining 🖶 accommodations	۲		Email Distribute, collect data using Email and Adobe Acrobat	
Reset	0	R	Internal Server Distribute, collect data using SharePoint or Network Folder	
Track			Continue	

- **4** If prompted, in the Distribute Form dialog box, enter or verify your email address, name, title, and organization name, and then click Next. If you've entered that information previously, Acrobat uses the information it has stored.
- 5 Click Send Using Adobe Acrobat, and click Next.

Distribute Form	×
How do you want to distribute your form?	
Send using Adobe Acrobat	
O Save a local copy and manually send it later	
Using the 'Send using Adobe Acrobat' option, one can choose to send the email using installed email client or configure web based mail accounts.	

6 Type your email address in the To box. Make sure Collect Name & Email From Recipients To Provide Optimal Tracking is selected. Then click Send.

Subject: Please complete the form MeridienFeedback_distributed.pdf Message: C\Users\Lisa Fridsma\Desktop\Lessons\Lesson11\Merid Reset default message You are invited to complete the form "MeridienFeedback_distributed.pdf". You can use Adobe Acrobat ro Adobe Acrobat Reader to fill in this form. Click the attachment to open the form in Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Acrobat Reader. When you are finished, click Submit to return your data to the form author. Get the free latest version of Adobe Acrobat Reader from: <http: go="" reader="" www.adobe.com=""> Collect name & email from recipients to provide optimal tracking</http:>	To		MillieP@xyz.r	net		
Message: C\Users\Lisa Fridsma\Desktop\Lesson\Lesson\Lesson\1\Merid Reset default message You are invited to complete the form "MeridienFeedback_distributed.pdf". You can use Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Acrobat Reader to fill in this form. Click the attachment to open the form in Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Acrobat Reader. When you are finished, click Submit to return your data to the form author. Get the free latest version of Adobe Acrobat Reader from: <http: go="" reader="" www.adobe.com=""></http:>	Subject:	Pleas	se complete the	form MeridienFee	dback_distributed.pdf	
You are invited to complete the form "MeridienFeedback_distributed.pdf". You can use Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Acrobat Reader to fill in this form. Click the attachment to open the form in Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Acrobat Reader. When you are finished, click Submit to return your data to the form author. Get the free latest version of Adobe Acrobat Reader from: http://www.adobe.com/go/reader Click the attact version of Adobe Acrobat Reader from: http://www.adobe.com/go/reader Click the attact version of Adobe Acrobat Reader from: http://www.adobe.com/go/reader	Message:	3	C:\Users\Lisa Fri	idsma\Desktop\Les	ssons\Lesson11\Merid	Reset default message
Collect name & email from recipients to provide optimal tracking	Click the atta finished, click	chment k Submit	to open the for to return your d	m in Adobe Acroba data to the form au	at or Adobe Acrobat Rea ithor.	ader. When you are
	Click the atta finished, clici Get the free <http: th="" www<=""><th>ichment k Submit latest ver v.adobe.</th><th>to open the forr to return your d rsion of Adobe / com/go/reader</th><th>m in Adobe Acroba fata to the form au Acrobat Reader fro ></th><th>at or Adobe Acrobat Rea thor.</th><th>ader. When you are</th></http:>	ichment k Submit latest ver v.adobe.	to open the forr to return your d rsion of Adobe / com/go/reader	m in Adobe Acroba fata to the form au Acrobat Reader fro >	at or Adobe Acrobat Rea thor.	ader. When you are

• Note: You can customize the subject line and email message that accompanies your form, and you can send the form to multiple people at once. You may want to provide instructions for recipients completing the form on the mobile app, as they won't see a Submit button.

- 7 In the Send Email dialog box, select Default Email Application if you want to send the message from an email application installed on your computer. If you want to use an online service such as Gmail or Yahoo Mail, select Use Webmail, enter your email address when prompted, and then click OK.
- 8 Click Continue.
- **9** If you are sending email through a webmail account, sign in when prompted, read any security messages, and grant access as required. Enter email addresses for recipients, and send the message.

If you choose to send the message through your default email application, Acrobat opens it and sends the message with the attached form. Depending on your email application, you may have to grant access or click Send in the application.

10 Check your email, and open the attached PDF file to complete the form.

The form opens in Acrobat, and a document message bar appears above it.

The document message bar displays information about the form. If the form does not contain a Submit Form button, one is included in the document message bar. Additionally, the document message bar specifies whether a form is certified or contains signature fields.

• Note: If you receive a message that you don't have a default email application, click OK. Acrobat then opens the Send Email dialog box.

• Note: If form recipients are using earlier versions of Acrobat or Reader, the document message bar may not be visible or may contain different information.

Tracking forms

If you've used Acrobat to distribute your forms, you can manage the forms that you have distributed or received. Use Tracker to view and edit the location of the response file, track who has responded, add more recipients, email all recipients, and view the responses for a form.

To track forms in Tracker:

1 Open the form you want to track, open the Prepare Form tool, and click Track in the right-hand pane.

Tracker displays reviews you've initiated and forms you've distributed.

- 2 In the left navigation pane, expand Forms, and click Distributed.
- 3 Select the form you want to track.

In the main pane, Tracker displays the location of the response file, the method used to distribute the form, the date it was distributed, the list of recipients, and whether each recipient has responded.

- 4 Do one or more of the following:
 - To view all responses for a form, click View Responses.
 - To modify the location of the response file, in Response File Location, click Edit File Location.
 - To view the original form, click Open Original Form.
 - To send the form to more recipients, click Add Recipients.
 - To send email to everyone who received the form, click Email All Recipients.
 - To remind recipients to complete the form, click Email Recipients Who Haven't Responded.

Collecting form data

Electronic forms aren't simply more convenient for users; they also make it easier for you to track, collect, and review form data. When you distribute a form, Acrobat automatically creates a PDF Portfolio for collecting the form data. By default, this file is saved in the same folder as the original form, and is named [filename]_responses.

You'll complete the form and submit it, and then collect the form data.

1 Complete the form you opened, and select options for each question, as if you were the recipient. Type a few words in the multiline field for number 4. Then click Submit Form.



- **2** In the Send Form dialog box, verify the email address and name you're using to send the data, and then click Send.
- **3** In the Send Email dialog box, select your default email application or Webmail, click Continue, and follow any prompts necessary to sign in. Click Continue or Allow if a warning dialog box appears.

If you receive a message about sending the email, click OK. Depending on settings in your email application, you may need to send the message manually.

- **4** Check your email. The completed form arrives in a message with the subject line "Submitting Completed Form," or the subject line you used if you mailed it manually. Open the attachment in that message.
- **5** Select Add to An Existing Response File, and accept the default filename. Then click OK.

Options for distributing forms

There are several ways to get your forms to the people who need to fill them out. You can simply post a form on a website, for example, or send it directly from your email application. To take advantage of Acrobat form-management tools to track, collect, and analyze data, use one of these options:

- Send the form as an email attachment, and manually collect responses in your email inbox.
- Send the form using a network folder or a Windows server running Microsoft SharePoint services. You can automatically collect responses on the internal server.

To distribute a form using any of these methods, click Distribute in the Forms panel, and then follow the online instructions. To learn more about distributing forms, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Note: Depending on the security settings in your email application, you may need to approve the message before it is sent. • Note: Adobe Flash Player is required to view the form response file. You may be prompted to install Adobe Flash Player if it's not on your system. Acrobat compiles the data in the response file that was created when you distributed the form.

6 Click Get Started at the bottom of the PDF Portfolio welcome screen.



• Note: You can add multiple form responses to the responses file at once. Click Add, and then navigate to the responses you want to include. With some email applications, you may need to use this method to add files, rather than doubleclicking an attachment. Form data you've collected is listed in the PDF Portfolio. Each response is listed as a separate component. You can use the PDF Portfolio to filter, export, and archive data.

Working with form data

Once your data has been compiled, you can view each response, filter responses according to specific questions, export the data to a CSV or XML file for use in a spreadsheet or database, or archive the data for access later. You'll filter the data from the feedback form and then export it to a CSV file.

- 1 Click Filter on the left side of the PDF Portfolio.
- 2 Scroll down the Select Field Name menu, and choose Other Feedback.
- **3** Select Is Not Blank from the next menu.

	Filter Settings Match the following:
Update	other feedback • is not blank •
Archive -	+ Add Filter - Clear All
Add	Done
Delete	

The form you completed is listed, because it contains data in the Other Feedback field.

4 Select Is Blank from the second menu.

The form you completed disappears, because it no longer matches the filter criteria. You can add filters to sort responses based on as many criteria as you like.

- 5 Select Is Not Blank again, so that your form reappears.
- **6** Click Done at the bottom of the Filter Settings pane.
- **7** Select the response.
- 8 Choose Export > Export Selected on the left side of the PDF Portfolio.
- **9** Select CSV as the file type, and click Save.

Acrobat creates a comma-separated data file that contains the data from the selected responses. You can open a CSV file in Microsoft Excel or another spreadsheet or database application.

10 Close any open PDF files and Tracker.

Exploring on your own: Calculating and validating numeric fields

Acrobat offers many ways to ensure that users fill out your forms correctly. You can experiment with creating fields that will allow the user to enter only information of a specific type. You can also create fields that automatically calculate values based on entries in other fields.

Validating numeric fields

To ensure that correct information is entered into form fields, use the Acrobat field validation feature. For example, if a response must be a number with a value between 10 and 20, restrict entries to numbers within this range. Here, you'll limit the price of instruments on an order form to no more than \$1,000.

- Choose File > Open, navigate to the Lesson11/Assets folder, and open the Order_Start.pdf file. This PDF file already has form fields in place.
- 2 Click Prepare Form in the Tools pane to edit the form.
- **3** Double-click the Price.0 field (the first cell in the Price Each column).
- **4** In the Text Field Properties dialog box, click the Format tab, and set the following values:
 - For Select Format Category, choose Number.
 - For Decimal Places, choose 2 (to allow cents to be entered).
 - For Separator Style, choose 1,234.56 (the default).
 - For Currency Symbol, choose \$ (the dollar sign).

Field Pro	operties							
General	Appearance	Position	Options	Actions	Format	Validate	Calculate	
Selec	t format categ	ory: Nu	nber	\sim				
	Deci	mal Places	: 2	\sim				
	Sepa	arator Style	: 1,234.	56	~			
	Curren	cy Symbo	s		~	1		

Now you'll specify a validation check on the data entered in this field.

5 Click the Validate tab, and then select Field Value Is In Range. In the range fields, type 0 in the From box and 1000 in the To box. Click Close.

eneral	Appearance	Position	Options	Actions	Format	Validate	Calculate
OFie	eld value is not	validated					
• Fie	eld value is in r	ange:					
Fr	om: 0	To:	1000				
OR	in custom vali	dation scri	pt:				
Г				_	matte.	ř.	
					Euitin		

6 Click Preview in the Prepare Form toolbar. Then type 2000 in the field you just edited (the first cell in the Price Each column), and press Enter or Return. A message warns you that the entry you have tried to make is unacceptable.

bottom	BOOMToonz, Inc Tel: 002-555-121	nz, Inc., PO Box 4, Anytown, MA 00055 5-1212 Fax: 002-555-1313		
	Price Each	Quantity	Item Total \$2.00	
Warning: JavaS	cript Window -			
	d value: must be greater than or	equal to 0 and less than o	r equal to 1000.	
			ОК	

7 Click OK to close the warning dialog box.

Calculating numeric fields

In addition to verifying and formatting form data, you can use Acrobat to calculate values used in form fields. For your PDF order form, you will calculate the cost for each line item, based on the quantity that has been ordered. You will then have Acrobat calculate the total cost of all items that have been ordered.

- 1 If you're in Preview mode, click Edit.
- **2** Double-click the Total.0 field (the first cell in the Item Total column).
- **3** In the Text Field Properties dialog box, click the Calculate tab, and do the following:
 - Select the Value Is The option.
 - For the value, choose Product (x). You'll be multiplying two fields.
 - Click Pick to select the fields to multiply. In the Field Selection dialog box, select the boxes next to Price.0 and Quantity.0. (To scroll through the list of fields, select one, and then press the Down Arrow key.)

Seneral	Appearance	Position	Options	Actions	Format	Validate	Calculate
OV	alue is not calo	ulated					
		-					

- **4** Click OK to close the Field Selection dialog box, and click Close to exit the Text Field Properties dialog box.
- **5** Click Preview. Then enter **1.50** for the price and **2** for the quantity in the first row, and press Enter or Return. The Item Total column displays \$3.00.
- 6 Close any open files, and quit Acrobat when you are finished.

Review questions

- 1 How can you convert an existing document into an interactive PDF form in Acrobat DC?
- **2** What is the difference between a radio button and a button in an interactive PDF form?
- **3** How can you distribute a form to multiple recipients and track the responses you receive?
- 4 Where does Acrobat compile form responses?

Review answers

- 1 To convert an existing document into an interactive PDF form, open the document in Acrobat. Then open the Prepare Form tool, select the current document, and click Start.
- 2 Radio buttons permit the user to select just one of a set of two or more options. Buttons trigger actions, such as playing a movie file, going to another page, or clearing form data.
- **3** You can email the form to recipients or post the form on an internal server. Click Distribute in the right-hand pane when the Prepare Form tool is open to select a distribution option.
- **4** When you use Acrobat to distribute a form, Acrobat automatically creates a PDF Portfolio file for your responses. By default, the file is in the same folder as the original form, and the word "_responses" is appended to the name of the original form.

12 USING ACTIONS (ACROBAT PRO)

Lesson overview

This lesson requires Acrobat Pro. In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Run an action.
- Create an action.
- Create an instruction step for an action.
- Set options in steps so the user doesn't need to provide input.
- Prompt the user for input on specific steps.
- Share an action.



This lesson will take approximately 45 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.

THOMAS BOOKER

Founder, President and CEO of Aquo

Biography

bottling initiative Thomas Booker founded Aquo Energy Drinks Ltd. in August 2006, and currently acts as the company's President and Chief Executive Officer. Mr. Booker is responsible for overseeing all Aquo business units, including Aquo energy drink and water brands, and also remains a driving force behind Aquo's product development. He has served on the boards of many large public companies, consulting them on environmentally sustainable business practices throughout his career. He currently serves as chairman of the California Corporte Green Building Council. Prior to founding Aquo, Mr. Booker was Director of Research and Development at Purely Natural Energy Company, the ground breaking Northwestern energy bar company that was the first to introduce a 100% organic bar to the national market in 1996. He earned a B.S. from the University of Virginia in 1987, and a MBA from the College of William & Mary in 1990. He was named Better magazine's 2006 "Most Environmentally Responsible CEO of the Year."



Actions in Adobe Acrobat DC Pro automate tasks and make processes more consistent. You can use the actions that come with Acrobat or create your own to use and share.

About actions

In Adobe Acrobat DC Pro, you can use actions to automate multistep tasks and share processes with others. An action is a collection of steps: Some steps, such as adding tags to a document, can be performed automatically by Acrobat. Some steps, such as removing hidden information, require input as to which information to remove or add, or which settings to use. Other steps, such as adding bookmarks, cannot be done automatically because you need to use human discretion to create and name the bookmarks; in those cases, an action includes instructions for the user to perform the necessary step before the action continues.

Acrobat Pro includes several actions in the Action Wizard tool. You can use these actions to perform common tasks, such as preparing documents for distribution or creating accessible PDFs. You can also create your own actions, assembling steps in the order that works for your process, and including informational steps where appropriate for the people who will be using each action.

Actions that contain automated steps are particularly useful for tasks you perform frequently. Actions in general are handy for tasks you perform less frequently, but which require the same steps each time. Using actions, you can ensure that critical steps are included in the process.

Using predefined actions

To use an action, open the Action Wizard tool, and select the action in the Actions List in the right-hand pane. In this exercise, you'll use the Prepare For Distribution action to prepare a document before posting it on an external website.

1 Start Acrobat Pro, and choose File > Open. Navigate to the Lesson12/Assets folder, select Aquo_CEO.pdf, and click Open.

The Aquo_CEO.pdf document is a biography of the chief executive of a fictitious beverage company.

2 Click Tools in the main toolbar, scroll to the Customize category, and then click Action Wizard to open it.

Customize			
\$	×	Ō	{}
Create Custom Tool	Action Wizard	Index	JavaScript
Add 🔻	Add 🔻	Add 🔻	Add 🔻

3 Select Prepare For Distribution in the Actions List in the right-hand pane.



The action steps and information appear where the Actions List was. The action pane names the files to be processed, lets you add files if you want to, and then lists the steps and information for the action itself.

4 Review the steps for this action. When you've read the information, click Start to proceed to the first step.

The Start button changes to a Stop button, which you can click at any time to stop the action. The Remove Hidden Information dialog box appears, and that step is highlighted in the action pane.

5 Click OK in the Remove Hidden Information dialog box to accept the default selections.



- **6** In the Add Watermark dialog box, do the following:
 - Click an insertion point in the Text box, and type **Copyright Aquo 2019**.
 - Select 20 for the font size
 - Set the Opacity to 20%.
 - In the Position area of the dialog box, choose Points, and enter 1 for the Vertical Distance. Then choose Bottom from the From menu.
 - Choose Right from the From menu for Horizontal Distance.

The watermark should appear in the lower right corner of the document in the Preview pane.

7 Click OK to accept the watermark.

🔿 🔿 🧶 Add Watermar	k
Saved Settings: [Custom-not saved] C Delete Save Settings	Page Range Options
Source	Preview
Copyright Aquo 2019	Preview Page 1 C of 1
Font: Arial Size: 20	ADUD THOMAS BOOKER
File <no file="" selected="" source=""> Choose</no>	Founder, Presidenc and CED of Aquo
Pege Number: 0 0 C Absolute Scale: 0	Stream Stream bitting bitti
Appearance	erritorenerstaffy annändik bestenen positiser divergebart his causas Het causande orren an chairman of die Caldinnia Corporate Genos Balding Concelli Post ein desanding dys 20,00 Honder wir die Diversio
Rotation: - 45* Q None 45* Custom 0* C Opacity:	al Results and School spears in the Viewal Enge Company in granularing the Information gales are not provide an effect of the School shares and the School shares and the School shares and fictures at ASE shores that the School shares are shared as 15th Anno and Coding of Witten King (1997) Bits are small down angunds. Stati School School King (1997) Alexa sourced down angunds. Stati School School down and down and down angunds. Stati School down and down and down and down angunds. Stati School down and down and down angunds. Stati School down and down and down and down angunds. Stati School down angunds. Stati School down and down angunds. Stati School down and down angunds. Stati School down angunds. Stati School down and down angunds. Stati School down and down angunds. Stati School down angunds. Stati School down
Scale relative to target page 50%	Perspective Mc Bookers is reinig proposent of the Aspo Green Building
Location: Appear behind page Appear on top of page	and if against process in most figure handling, and have how mo the 20 ST from a single sector of the single sector of the single sector of the single de configuration of the single sector of the
Position	un the quantal and the second and th
Vertical Distance: Points O from Bottom	(b) The Manufacture State (2004) State and up of the state (2004) State (2004) France State (2004) Fran
Horizontal Distance: 0 C Points C from Right C	Copyright Aquo 2019
Help	Cancel

Tip: To add a header or footer when you're not using an action, open the Edit PDF tool, and choose Header & Footer > Add. 8 In the Add Header And Footer dialog box, click an insertion point in the Center Header Text box, and then type **Aquo Corporate Information**. Change the font size to 9. The header appears in the preview area. Click OK to add the header and close the dialog box.

	Jonete Jave Settings						
Font		Margin	(Inches)				
Name: Arial	Size: 9	Тор:	0.5	0	Bottom:	0.5	¢
ppearance Options		Left:	1	0	Right:	1	0
Left Header Text	Center Header Text	Ri	ght Head	er Text			
	Aquo Corporate Information						
Left Footer Text	Center Footer Text	Ri	ght Foote	er Text			
					o de la composición d	r and Date	Format
Insert Page Nu	imber Insert Da	ate		Pag	e Numbe	s and Date	
Insert Page Nu	Insert Da	ate		Pag	<u>le Numbe</u>	Tana Date	
Insert Page Nu Preview Preview Page 1 0 of 1	Insert Da	ate		Pag	<u>e Numbe</u> <u>Page</u>	Range O	otions
Preview Preview Page 1 0 of 1	Insert Da	ate		Pag	<u>e Numbe</u> <u>Page</u>	Range O	otions
Insert Page No	Insert Da	on		Pag	<u>e Numbe</u> Page	Range O	otions
Preview Page 1 C of 1	Insert Da	on		Pag	<u>Page</u>	Range O	otions
Preview Page 1 C of 1	Insert Da	on			Page	Range O	otions
Insert Page Nu Preview Page 1 C of 1	Aquo Corporate Informati	on			Page	Range O	otions
Insert Page No Preview Page 1 C of 1	Aquo Corporate Informati	on		Pag	Page	Range Or	otions
Insert Page Nu Preview Page 1 C of 1	Aquo Corporate Informati	on		Pag		Range O	otions

9 In the Save As PDF dialog box, name the document **Aquo_CEO_dist.pdf**, save it to the Lesson12/Finished_Projects folder, and click Save.

The action pane now shows the word Completed where the Stop button was.



• Note: By default, Acrobat saves the new file to the folder that contains the original file. You can specify a different location. **10** Click Full Report at the bottom of the action pane to see an itemized list of the tasks performed by the action. The report opens in a browser window. When you're done reviewing it, close the browser.

← Prepare for Distribution	Action Name: Prepare for Distribution
Files to be processed:	[-]Aquo_CEO.pdf(Succeeded)
	1. Remove Hidden Information
Aquo_CEO.pdf	and the second
	Command Start Time: 2018-11-23 11:29:28
Add Files 🔻	reportType: Note
	errorCode: 0
Completed	message: Remove Hidden Information results
Completed	moreInfo:
	Where found, the following types of information was removed:MetadataFil
	Command Status: Succeeded
Clean Un	Command Finish Time: 2018-11-23 11:30:02
olean op	2. Add Watermark
	In Property Concession
	Command Name: Add Watermark
i Remove Hidden Information	Command Start Time: 2018-11-23 11:30:02
	Command Status: Succeeded
Use these tools to brand documents	3. Add Header & Footer
before distributing.	
	Command Name: Add Header & Footer
Add Watermark	Command Statut Time: 2018-11-23 11:32:11
	Command Finish Time: 2018-11-23 11:33:16
Add Header & Footer 🕑	4. Save As
E save to	Command Repet mine. 2019 11-22 11.22.16
Di Save As	Command Status: Succeeded
	Command Finish Time: 2018-11-23 11:34:16
Full Beport	
6")	

11 In Acrobat Pro, leave the Action Wizard tool and the document open.

Creating an action

You can create your own actions, assembling Acrobat steps and instructional steps to automate a process or to make it more consistent. Before you create an action, consider the steps involved and the logical order for those steps. For example, encrypting a document with password protection should be among the last steps in an action.

You'll create an action for preparing a multimedia presentation in Acrobat DC Pro. The steps you'll include are adding a header or footer to visually link the pages to each other, adding video files, creating page transitions, setting the file to open in Full Screen mode, and then adding a password to the document to prevent others from making changes. 1 In the Action Wizard toolbar, click New Action.

The Create New Action dialog box is divided into two panes. The left pane displays tools that you can include in the action (arranged by category). In the right pane of the dialog box are options for files to be processed and the steps you've added to the action. Use the buttons on the far right to design the action's appearance; you can add dividers, panels, and instructions.

2 In the Create New Action dialog box, make sure Add Files is chosen from the Default Option menu.

bose tools to add:	Action steps to s		
Pages Pages Forms Recognize Text Protection Document Processing Accessibility Save & Export Go To More Tools	Files to be Currently Default option Add File Untitled	how: Processed open file as default : s	E © ↑ ↓

You can apply an action to an open file, or the action can prompt the user to select a file or folder, require the user to scan a document, or open a file from cloud storage.

Adding steps to an action

▶ Tip: If you change your mind about a step, you can delete it. Select the step, and then click the Remove button () on the right side of the dialog box. To change the order of steps, use the Move Up and Move Down buttons. Now you're ready to add the steps.

- 1 Expand the Pages category in the left pane of the dialog box, and select Add Header & Footer.
- Click the Add To Right-Hand Pane button () in the middle of the dialog box.The Add Header & Footer step appears in the panel in the list on the right.
- **3** Make sure Prompt User is selected for the step. When the action runs, the user can customize the header or footer for the presentation.

hoose tools to add:	 Action steps to show:	
Content	Files to be Processed	Eo
* Pages	Currently open file as default	Go
Rotate Pages		0
Delete Pages	Add Files	т. Т
Replace Pages	Untitled	
Crop Pages	Add Header & Footer	4
Insert Pages	E Specify Settings	Ū
Insert Blank Page	Prompt User	
Add Header & Footer		
Remove Header & Footer		
Add Background		
Remove Background		
Add Watermark		
and the second sec	-	

The next step is to add video files. There is no Add Video step available in the Create New Action dialog box, so you'll add an instruction step for the user.

4 Click the Add Instruction button (3) on the right side of the dialog box.

5 In the Add Or Edit Label dialog box, type Add video files as appropriate. To add a video, click Add Video in the Rich Media toolbar, drag a box on the page, and select the video file and any settings. Then click Save.

You can add as much or as little information as you want in an instruction step. If you're sharing your action with people who are less familiar with Acrobat, consider providing detailed steps. If you're creating an action for yourself, a reminder to perform the step, such as "Add video," may be enough.

6 Click Pause for the step you created to give the user time to read your instructions.

	Untitled
Add or Edit Label	Add Header & Footer
Instructions: Add video files as appropriate. To add a video, click Add Video in the Rich Media toolbar, drag a box on the page, and select the video file and any settings	Add video files as appropriate. To add a video, click Add Video in the Rich Media toolbar, drag a box on the page, and select the video file and any settings.
Cancel Save	Pause

While an action is running, you can't access the Tools pane or the Tools Center. So if you need users to access a tool, add a Go To step. In this case, you want the user to use the Add Rich Media tool to add a video.

7 Expand the Go To category, and double-click Add Rich Media.

	Add Header & Footer Add video files as appropria video, click Add Video in the toolbar, drag a box on the p select the video file and any Add Rich Media	te. To add a e Rich Media age, and settings.
--	---	---
8 Expand the Document Processing category in the left pane, and double-click Page Transitions.



When you double-click an option on the left side, it's automatically added as a step on the right.

- 9 Click the Specify Settings button in the Page Transitions step.
- **10** Choose Dissolve from the Transition menu, and then choose Medium from the Speed menu. Then click OK.

	Page Transit	ions	
Page Transition			
Transition: Dissolve)		0
Direction:			٥
Speed: Medium)		0
🗌 Auto Flip			
After 0	Seconds		
Page Range			
O All pages in docume	int		
O Pages range:			
From: 1	To: 1		
		Cancel	ок

11 Deselect Prompt User in the Page Transitions step.

Acrobat will automatically apply the options you select for the Page Transitions step, without prompting the user.

- **12** In the left pane, double-click Set Open Options in the Document Processing category.
- **13** Deselect Prompt User, and then click the Specify Settings button for the new step. In the Set Open Options dialog box, choose Yes from the Open In Full Screen Mode menu, and then click OK.

	Set	Open Options
	Initial View	Open Action
	O Page Only	💟 Leave As Is
	O Bookmarks and Page	Page Number: 8 of 0
	O Thumbnail Images and Page	Magnification: Fit Page
	O Layers and Page	
	O Leave As Is	
	Page Layout: <leave as="" is=""></leave>	
	Window Options	User Interface Options
Add Rich Media	Resize Window To Initial Page: <a> 	Hide Toolbar: <a>Leave As Is>
Page Transitions	Open In Full Screen Mode: Yes	Hide Window Controls: <a>Leave As Is>
	Center Window On Screen: <pre></pre> <pre></pre> <pre>Leave As Is</pre>	Hide Menubar: <leave as="" is=""> 📀</leave>
Set Open Options	Display Document Title: <a> Leave As Is	> 📀
Specify Settings		Cancel

14 Expand the Protection category, and then double-click Encrypt. Make sure that Prompt User is selected in the Encrypt step so that each user can set an individual password.

Encrypt	⊙ →	a video, click Add Video in the Media toolbar, drag a box on th and select the video file and ar	Rich ne page, ly	Ū
Apply Redactions		settings.		
Remove Hidden Information		Set Open Options		
Document Processing		E Specify Settings	J	

Saving an action

When you've added all the steps, confirmed that they're in the appropriate order, and specified the options you want, save and name the action.

- 1 Click Save.
- 2 Name the action Prepare Multimedia Presentation.
- **3** For the action description, type **Add video**, **headers**, **transitions**, **and a password to a presentation**. Then click Save.

Save Act	ion
action Name:	
Prepare Multimedia Presentation	
action Description:	
Add video, headers, transitions, and a passwo	rd to a presentation.
	Canaal

Give actions names that help you remember what the actions do. It's usually a good idea, especially if you'll be sharing the action, to describe the product of the action or when you should use it, such as when you're preparing documents for a particular client or purpose.

Testing an action

Now you'll test-drive your action to ensure it works the way you expect. You'll create a multimedia presentation for a fictitious beverage company.

- 1 Choose File > Open, and open the Aquo_presentation.pdf file in the Lesson12/Assets folder.
- 2 Click Tools, and then open the Action Wizard tool.
- **3** In the Actions List, select Prepare Multimedia Presentation. The action steps replace the Actions List, and the open document is the default file to be processed.
- 4 Click Start to proceed to the first step in the action.

ACTIONS LIST	← Prepare Multimedia Pre
	Files to be processed:
Prepare Multimedia Pres	Aquo_presentation.pdf
Make Accessible	Add Files
Archive Documents	Start
Publish Sensitive Informa	Untitled

5 In the Add Header And Footer dialog box, click an insertion point in the Left Header Text box, and then type Aquo Shareholders Meeting 2019. Change the font size to 10, and then click OK.

0.0 •	Add Header and Foote	r	
aved Settings: [Custom-not saved]	Delete Save Settings		
Font		Margin (Inches)	
Name: Arial	Size: 10 <u>U</u>	Top: 0.5 © Bottom: 0.5	¢
Appearance Options		Left: 1 C Right: 1	Ç
Left Header Text	Center Header Text	Right Header Text	
Aquo Shareholders Meeting 2019			
Left Footer Text	Center Footer Text	Right Footer Text	
Insert Page Num	Der Insert Da	ate Page Number and Date	Format
Preview			
Preview Page 1 0 of 3		Page Range Or	otions
Aquo Shareholders Mee	ting 2019		
CIFAR	Y		
******	1010		~~~~
To learn more, please visit www.aqu	o-drinks.com		
2220202222		<u> </u>	
Help		Cancel	ок

The instruction step you created appears on the screen. Because you selected the Pause option for the step, the user must click Click To Proceed in order to continue working through the action. You'll add a video.

6 Click Click To Proceed in the instruction box. Acrobat opens the Add Rich Media tool and presents another informational message at the bottom of the application window.



• Note: Adobe Flash Player is required to insert and play the video. You may be prompted to install Adobe Flash Player if it's not on your system. 7 Click Add Video in the Add Rich Media toolbar. Drag a box over the right half of the bottle ad page (the first page in the document). Click Browse or Choose, select the Aquo_T03_Loop.mp4 file from the Lesson12/Assets folder, and click Open. Then click OK.



8 Click the Play button to preview the video file. When you're done, click the Pause button to stop it. Then click Click To Proceed in the informational box to proceed to the next step.

Acrobat automatically performs the next two steps—adding page transitions and setting the presentation to open in Full Screen mode—because no input is required. The final step is adding a password, which does require input.

9 In the Document Security dialog box, choose Password Security from the Security Method menu. In the Permissions area of the Password Security – Settings dialog box, select Restrict Editing And Printing Of the Document. In the Change Permissions Password box, enter Aquo1234 as the password. Then click OK.

Avoiding the Full Screen mode warning

By default, Acrobat warns you when a PDF file is set to be opened in Full Screen mode, because it is possible for malicious programmers to create PDF files that appear to be other applications. If you click Remember My Choice For This Document, Acrobat will not show the warning again when you open the presentation on this computer. If you are presenting material on your own computer, you can change the preference so that Acrobat will not display the warning at the beginning of your presentation. To change the preference, choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), and then click Full Screen on the left. Deselect the Alert When Document Requests Full Screen option.

• Note: Acrobat reports how secure your password is when you create it. To help you work through the action quickly, we're using a very simple password with only a Medium rating. When you create passwords, strive for a Strong rating.

	Password Security - Settings		
Document Open			
Require a password to open the doo	ument		
Document Open Password:			Not Rated
1. No password will be required to o	pen this document.		
Permissions			
Restrict editing and printing of the estimate	document. A password will be required in order to change these permission settings.		
Printing Allowed:	None	0	
Changes Allowed:	None	0	
Enable conving of text_images_an	d other content		
Enable text access for screen read	er devices for the visually impaired		
Change Permissions Password:	••••		Medium
Options			
Compatibility: Acrobat 7.0 and later	C Encryption Level: 128-bit AES		
Encrypt all document contents			
 Encrypt all document contents exce 	pt metadata (Acrobat 6 and later compatible)		
O Encrypt only file attachments (Acro	bat 7 and later compatible)		
(!) All contents of the document will	be encrypted and search engines will not be able to access the document's metadata.		
Help		Car	ncel OK N

10 Click OK in the informational dialog box, enter the password again when prompted, and then click OK. Click Close to close the Document Security dialog box.

The Action Wizard pane shows that the Prepare Multimedia Presentation action has been completed.

- **11** Choose File > Save As, name the presentation file **Aquo_meeting.pdf**, save it to the Lesson12/Finished_Projects folder, and then click Save.
- 12 Close the document. If you want to see the presentation open in Full Screen mode with its header and page transitions, open the Aquo_meeting.pdf file in Acrobat. When you're done, press the Esc key to exit Full Screen mode, and then close the file.

Sharing actions

► Tip: You can edit actions after you create them: Click Manage Actions. In the Manage Actions dialog box, select the action name, and click Edit. You can share actions you create or edit with other users.

- 1 If you're using macOS, open a PDF file so that you can access tools.
- **2** Open the Action Wizard tool.
- **3** Click Manage Actions in the Action Wizard toolbar.
- 4 Select the Prepare Multimedia Presentation action, and click Export.



5 Name the action **Prepare Multimedia Presentation** (the default name), save it in the Lesson12/Finished_Projects folder, and click Save.

The action file is saved with the .sequ extension. You can copy .sequ files or email them to other users. To open an .sequ file that someone has sent you, click Import in the Manage Actions dialog box, and select the action file.

6 Click Close to close the Manage Actions dialog box. Then close any open documents, and quit Acrobat.

Review questions

- 1 What is an action in Acrobat DC Pro?
- **2** How can you create a step in an action if the step isn't available in the left pane of the Create New Action dialog box?
- 3 How can you share an action with others?

Review answers

- 1 An action is a collection of steps: Some steps, such as adding tags to a document, can be performed automatically by Acrobat. Some steps, such as removing hidden information, require input as to what to remove or add, or which settings to use. Other steps, such as adding bookmarks, cannot be done automatically, because you need to use human discretion to create and name the bookmarks.
- **2** To include a step that isn't predefined in Acrobat, click the Add Instruction button, and then type instructions to the user.
- **3** To share an action, click Manage Actions in the Action Wizard toolbar, select the action you want to share, and click Export. Then send the resulting .sequ file to the person you want to share the action with.

13 USING ACROBAT IN PROFESSIONAL PRINTING

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you'll do the following:

- Create Adobe PDF files suitable for high-resolution printing.
- Preflight an Adobe PDF file to check for quality and consistency (Acrobat Pro).
- View how transparent objects affect a page (Acrobat Pro).
- Configure color management.
- Use Acrobat to generate color separations.



This lesson will take approximately 60 minutes to complete. Download the project files for this lesson, following the instructions in the Getting Started section under "Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition," if you haven't already done so. As you work on this lesson, you'll preserve the start files. If you need to restore the start files, download them from your Account page.



Self reinvention is something we all entertain, and the way fashion allows us to dream.

lice Ritter is kneeling at the feet of a long-limbed model, one of a dozen milling around a photography set in clothes from her Fall-Winter 2011 collection. It is crucial that she get the girl's pant legs scrunched just so for the shoot. Precise, but with an unstudied symmetry that somehow comes off as casual. She readily admits to being obsessed with this level of detail, because it's where story springs from. "Design is storytelling," Ritter explains. "You start to draw, then you go into the details and the story takes over."

As much as detail is the motor that drives the story inherent in an Alice Ritter piece, it's also what provokes an emotional response to the item. "The piece has to trigger an emotion," Ritter believes, and the seat of emotion is detail. Detail grabs you by the scruff of the neck. It slips its hand in yours. It follows you home. Detail is what makes an item "really special," she says, "the one dress you'll wear for ten years."

So she sweats the small stuff, crafting and editing a fresh batch of stories with each new collection. The unifying design element--the signature plotline threading one season to the nextis the vision of a better Alice. One who regularly tumbles down the rabbit hole to see where the



path might lead her. The story she's telling and the design process that leads her there is "a reflection of my journey, my self-discovery. A big part of my identity—or my dreamed identity goes into my design."

Which raises a really good question: Who is Alice Ritter anyway? There are at least two ways to tell that story.

A small-town French girl raised in a nice family with traditional bourgeois values, she grew up playing dress up in her grandparents' attic with a cache of 19th century gowns and corsets. While that piqued her interest in fashion early on, the couture in the pages of French Vogue—Chanel, Yves Saint Laurent and Balmain and the rest—hooked her for life on design. "I

Acrobat Pro provides professional printing tools, including preflighting and transparency previews, to help you achieve high-quality output.

Creating PDF files for print and prepress

As you learned in Lesson 2, there are many ways to create a PDF file from your original document. No matter which method you choose, however, you need to use the appropriate PDF preset for your intended output. For high-resolution, professional printing, specify the Press Quality PDF preset or a custom PDF preset provided by your printer.

About Adobe PDF presets

A PDF preset is a group of settings that affect the process of creating a PDF file. These settings are designed to balance file size with quality, depending on how the PDF file will be used. Most predefined presets are shared across Adobe Creative Cloud applications, including Adobe InDesign, Adobe Illustrator, Adobe Photoshop, and Acrobat. You can also create and share custom presets to meet your own needs.

Presets that include "(Japan)" in their names are specifically designed for Japanese print workflows. For more detailed descriptions of each preset, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

- **High Quality Print** creates PDFs for quality printing on desktop printers and proofing devices.
- **Oversized Pages** creates PDFs suitable for viewing and printing engineering drawings larger than 200 by 200 inches.
- **PDF/A-1b (CMYK and RGB)** standards are used for the long-term preservation (archival) of electronic documents.
- **PDF/X-1a** standards minimize the number of variables in a PDF document to improve reliability. PDF/X-1a files are commonly used for digital ads that will be reproduced on a press.
- **PDF/X-3** files are similar to PDF/X-1a files, but they support color-managed workflows and allow some RGB images.
- **PDF/X-4** has the same color-management ICC color specifications as PDF/X-3, but includes support for live transparency.
- **Press Quality** creates PDF files for high-quality print production (for example, for digital printing or for separations to an imagesetter or platesetter).
- **Smallest File Size** creates PDF files for displaying on the web or an intranet, or for distribution through an email system.
- **Standard** creates PDF files to be printed to desktop printers or digital copiers, published on a CD, or sent to a client as a publishing proof.

Guidelines for creating print-ready PDF files

By the time you submit a PDF file to a printer, the die has been cast. A printer can coax a quality printout from some less-than-optimal PDF files, but for the most part, the printer is restricted by decisions made during the creative process. Following these guidelines, you can deliver the strongest, highestquality PDF files to a printer:

- Remember that the end product is only as good as its components. For high-quality printing, a PDF file must contain the appropriate images, fonts, and other components.
- Convert only when absolutely necessary. Every time you convert text, objects, or color, you
 compromise the integrity of the file. The printed product will most closely resemble your original
 intent if you minimize conversions. Keep text in its original form, as fonts, rather than outlining or
 rasterizing it. Keep gradients live. Maintain live transparency as long as possible. And don't convert
 colors from device-independent or high-gamut color spaces, such as RGB, to device-specific or
 low-gamut color spaces, such as CMYK, unless advised to do so.
- Use transparency efficiently. Transparency comes into play any time you apply a blending mode
 or change the opacity of an object. For the best results, keep transparency live as long as possible;
 place objects you don't want the flattener to affect (such as text and line objects) above all nearby
 sources of transparency, preferably on a separate layer; and use the highest quality flattener
 settings if and when you flatten transparency.
- **Proof and preflight before creating the PDF file.** Early in the workflow, you have more context for problems, and more options for fixing them. Carefully proof the content and formatting before creating a PDF file. Additionally, if the authoring application provides a preflight feature, use it to identify missing fonts, unlinked images, or other issues that could result in problems down the road. The earlier you can identify and fix a problem, the easier and less expensive it is to fix. Certainly, technical problems found while you're still working in the authoring program are easier to fix than problems found in Acrobat or on a printing press.
- **Embed fonts.** To minimize the chance of complications, embed fonts in the PDF file. Read the end user license agreement (EULA) before purchasing a font to ensure it permits embedding.
- Use the appropriate PDF settings file. When you create the PDF file, make sure you're using
 the appropriate settings. The PDF settings file determines how image data is saved, whether
 fonts are embedded, and whether colors are converted. By default, Acrobat PDFMaker in Microsoft
 Office creates PDF files using the Standard settings file, which does not meet the requirements
 for most high-end printing. No matter what application you're using to create a PDF file for
 professional printing, ensure that you're using the PDF/X-1a or Press Quality PDF settings file,
 or the settings file recommended by your printer.
- Create a PDF/X file if appropriate. PDF/X is a subset of the Adobe PDF specification, requiring
 that PDF files meet specific criteria for the printing industry, resulting in more reliable PDF files.
 Using PDF/X-compliant files eliminates the most common errors in file preparation: fonts that
 aren't embedded, incorrect color spaces, and overprinting issues. PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4
 are the most popular formats; each is designed for a different purpose. Ask your printer whether
 you should save your file in a PDF/X format.

Creating the PDF file

You can create a PDF file from any application using the Print command. Because we do not know which applications you use, we have not included a file for this exercise. You can use any existing document or create a new document. The following steps are appropriate for most applications.

- 1 Open any document in its original application.
- 2 Choose File > Print.
- **3** Do one of the following:

In Windows: Choose Adobe PDF from the list of available printers. Then click Properties, Preferences, Printer Properties, or Setup, depending on the application. Choose Press Quality or a custom PDF settings file.

Print		×
Printer: Adobe PDF	Properties Advanced	Help ①
Copies: 1	Print in grays te (black and white)	
	Save ink/toner	

In macOS: Click PDF, and choose Save As Adobe PDF from the menu. Then, in the Save As Adobe PDF dialog box, select the Press Quality settings file or a custom settings file from the Adobe PDF Settings menu, and click Continue.

4 In Windows, choose Prompt For Adobe PDF Filename from the Adobe PDF Output Folder menu, and then click OK. If you do not select this option, the Adobe PDF printer saves the file in the My Documents folder. (In macOS, you will be prompted for a filename and location automatically.)

H Add	bbe PDF Document Proper	ties		
Layout	Paper/Quality 🛃 Adobe	PDF Settings		
Adob	e PDF Conversion Settings			
	Use mese settings to create.	Adobe PDP documents best suited for hig	in drawy breb	ress printing.
8	Created PDF documents car	n be opened with Acrobat and Adobe Rea	ider 5.0 and lat	ler,
8	Created PDF documents car Default Settings.	Press Quality	ider 5.0 and lat	ler. Edit
8	Created PDF documents car Default Settings: Adobe PDF Security:	Press Quality	v lat	Edit

- 5 In Windows, click Print or OK.
- 6 Specify a filename and folder for the PDF file when prompted, and click Save.
- 7 Close the PDF file and the original document.

For more information about selecting presets, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

• Note: Some applications don't use the standard Print dialog boxes to create PDF files. For example, to save a PDF file from Adobe InDesign, use the Export command.

Preflighting files (Acrobat Pro)

Before you hand off a PDF file to a print service provider, preflight it to verify that the document meets the criteria for print publishing. Preflighting analyzes a document against the criteria listed in the preflight profile you specify; in addition to identifying potential issues, many preflight profiles contain fixups that can correct problems for you.

Ask your print service provider which preflight profile to use to accurately preflight your document. Many print service providers provide custom preflight profiles to their customers.

You'll preflight a file to determine whether it's ready for digital printing.

- In Acrobat Pro, choose File > Open, and navigate to the Lesson13/Assets folder. Select the Profile.pdf file, and click Open.
- 2 Click Tools to open the Tools Center. Then, choose Add Shortcut in the menu beneath the Print Production tool (in the Protect & Standardize category) to add the tool to the Tools pane if it's not already there. You'll use the tool multiple times in this lesson.
- **3** In the Tools pane, click Print Production.



4 Click Preflight in the right-hand pane.

The Preflight dialog box lists the available preflight profiles, grouped into categories that describe the tests they perform.

- **5** Click the triangle next to Digital Printing And Online Publishing to expand the category.
- **6** Select the Digital Printing (Color) profile.

When you select the profile, Acrobat displays its description.

7 Click Analyze And Fix.

Preflight				
		Essentials •		
Profiles	K Results	Standards		Options •
Show all	•	1 A 🖗	111 Find	8
V Digital printin	g and online	publishing		
Digital pri	nting (R/W)			-
Digital pri	iting (color)			Edit
 Optimizes including 	spot colors - 1	F document for digita to CMYK.	al printing. Conve	rts all colors
▶ PDF analysis				
► PDF fixups				
► PDF/A compli	ance			
PDF/UA comp	liance			
▶ PDF/X compli	ance			
▶ Prepress				
Further Options			Quanta 30	analiga and fit
NAMES OF A DESCRIPTION OF		4	rynany2e	Compare and the

8 In the Save As PDF dialog box, name the fixed file **Profile_fixed.pdf**, save it to the Lesson13/Finished_Projects folder, and click Save.

Because the profile applies fixups, it makes changes to the file. Saving the file to a different name ensures that you can return to the original if you need to.

9 Review the results of the preflight.

Acrobat displays the results of the preflight in the Results pane. In this file, Acrobat performed several fixups, applying compression, color conversion, and transparency flattening, as well as other changes.

The Results pane also notes that a white object is not set to knock out. If you were professionally printing this document, you might want to contact your print service provider to ensure that any factors reported in the Results pane won't cause problems when your document is printed.

- **10** Click Create Report.
- **11** Navigate to the Lesson13/Finished_Projects folder, and then click Save to save the report with the default name **Profile_fixed_report.pdf**.

Acrobat creates the preflight summary report as a PDF and opens it in Acrobat.



12 Close the Preflight dialog box, and review the preflight summary report.

You can send the preflight summary report to your print service provider if you have any questions about preparing the file. Note that there are five pages to the report: The first page provides a summary of fixups and errors. The summary page is followed by the document itself, with comments identifying where errors occur.

13 Choose File > Close to close the preflight summary report, and then choose File > Close again to close the Profile_fixed.pdf file.

► Tip: You can hide or show individual layers that were created in the authoring application, and determine which ones will print. To learn about showing, hiding, and printing layers, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Custom preflight profiles

You can customize the preflight profiles included with Acrobat, import profiles provided by your print service provider, or create your own custom profiles. To create a new profile, open the Preflight dialog box, and choose Options > Create Profile. To modify an existing profile, select it, click Edit next to its name, and then, if it's locked, choose Unlocked, and give the custom version a new name. Next, choose a group for the profile. Then expand the profile, click a category of criteria, and add or remove specific checks or fixups. Save the profile when you're done.

To import a preflight profile, open the Preflight dialog box, and choose Options > Import Profile. Navigate to the custom profile, which has a .kfp extension, and click Open.

To export a profile, select the profile you want to share, and then choose Options > Export Profile. Define the display name of the profile, and then specify the location where you want to save it.

Working with transparency (Acrobat Pro)

Adobe applications let you modify objects in ways that can affect the underlying artwork, creating the appearance of transparency. You may create transparency by using an opacity slider in InDesign, Illustrator, or Photoshop, or by changing the blending mode for a layer or selected object. Transparency also comes into play whenever you create a drop shadow or apply feathering. Adobe applications can keep transparency "live," or editable, as you move documents from one application to another, but transparency must typically be flattened before printing. In Acrobat Pro, you can see which areas of your document are affected by transparency and how those areas will print.

Previewing transparency

When you print to most printers, transparency is flattened. The flattening process separates overlapping areas of artwork into discrete sections that are converted either into separate vector shapes or rasterized pixels to retain the look of the transparency.





Objects before flattening Objects after flattening (Overlapping art is divided when flattened.)

• Note: If your print service provider is using a RIP (raster image processor) that includes the Adobe PDF Print Engine, you may not need to flatten transparency. Before flattening occurs, you can determine how much of the transparent area remains vector, and how much becomes rasterized. Some effects, such as drop shadows, must be rasterized in order to print correctly.





If you receive a PDF file created by someone else, you may not know if or where transparency has been applied. The Acrobat transparency preview shows you where transparency is used in a document. This feature can also help you determine the best flattener settings to use when printing the document.

PDF standards

PDF standards are internationally defined standards designed to simplify the exchange of graphic content (PDF/X), archived documents (PDF/A), or engineering workflows (PDF/E). The most widely used standards for a print publishing workflow are PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4.

You can validate PDF content against PDF/X, PDF/A, or PDF/E criteria in Acrobat Pro and save a copy of the document as PDF/X, PDF/A, or PDF/E, provided it complies with the specified requirements. You can also save a PDF file as a PDF/X or PDF/A file when you create the file using the Print command or the Export or Save command in an Adobe application.

In Acrobat DC or Acrobat Reader DC, you can use the Standards pane to see information about the file's conformance. The Standards pane is available only if an open document conforms to a standard; choose View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Standards to open it. If you are using Acrobat DC Pro, you can also click Verify Conformance in the Standards pane to use the preflight feature to verify that the PDF file is a valid PDF/X or PDF/A file.

To save a copy of an existing PDF file as a PDF/X, PDF/A, or PDF/E file in Acrobat DC Pro:

- 1 Choose File > Save As.
- 2 Select a destination folder for the file.
- 3 In the Save As dialog box, choose PDF/A, PDF/E, or PDF/X from the Save As Type or Format menu, and click Settings.
- 4 Select the version of the standard and any other options, and click OK.
- 5 In the Save As dialog box, name the converted file, and click Save.

Acrobat converts the file, displaying messages about its progress.

► Tip: In Acrobat DC Pro, you can quickly see whether a PDF file includes transparency: Select Output Preview in the right-hand pane of the Print Production panel. At the bottom of the Output Preview dialog box, Acrobat reports whether the page has transparency. If it doesn't, there's no need to flatten it. You'll preview transparency in the Profile.pdf file.

- 1 Open the Profile.pdf file from the Lesson13/Assets folder.
- 2 Navigate to page 1 of the document. If the entire page is not visible, choose View > Zoom > Zoom To Page Level.
- **3** Open the Print Production tool, and then click Flattener Preview in the righthand pane.

Flattener Preview	×
Preview Settings Refresh Highlight None (Color Preview) V	-
Transparency Flattener Preset Options Preset: [High Resolution] Reset: Sove Delete Raster/Vector Balance: [Ine Art and Text resolution: 1200 ppi Gradient and Mesh resolution: 1200 ppi Convert All Text to Outlines Chip Complex Regions. Preserve Overprint [OK Cancel]	ALICE RITTER
Page-Level Transparency Blending Color Space Color Space: DeviceCMYX Change Compression Settings For Flattener-Generated Images: Monochrome: CCITT Group 4	Apply to PDF All pages in document Current page Pages range: From: To:
Grayscale: ZIP · · Color: JPEG · Quality: Medium ·	Apply

The Flattener Preview shows a preview of page 1 of the document on the right side of the dialog box.

Specifying flattener preview settings

You can select different settings to preview different aspects of the way transparency interacts with objects in the document.

1 In the Flattener Preview dialog box, choose All Affected Objects from the Highlight menu. Nearly the entire page is highlighted in red, indicating that the objects themselves have transparent properties or interact with objects that have transparent properties. Only a few items, including the text at the bottom of the page, are not affected by transparency. 2 Choose High Resolution from the Preset menu in the Transparency Flattener Preset Options area. The preset determines how much of the artwork remains vector and how much is rasterized. For professional printing, use the High Resolution preset unless your print service provider advises you differently.

tener Preview	
Preview Settings	
Refresh Highlight All Affected Objects	
Transparency Flattener Preset Options	
Preset: [High Resolution]	/ < PROFILE >
Reset Save Delete	C.S. William
Raster/Vector Balance:	
100	
Rasters Vectors	
Line Art and Text resolution: 1200 Y ppi	
Gradient and Mesh resolution: 300 v ppi	
Convert All Text to Outlines	
Convert All Strokes to Outlines	
Clip Complex Regions	
Preserve Overprint	
OK Cancel	

What is rasterization?

Rasterization is the process of changing vector objects, including fonts, into bitmap images to display or print them. The number of pixels per inch (ppi) is referred to as the *resolution*. The higher the resolution in a raster image, the better the quality. When flattening occurs, some objects may need to be rasterized, depending upon flattening settings.







Rasterized at 300 ppi

Vector Object

Rasterized at 72 ppi

3 Click the left end of the Raster/Vector Balance slider, or type **0** in the box. Then click Refresh in the Preview Settings area, and choose All Affected Objects from the Highlight menu. Everything on the page is highlighted in red, indicating that everything would be rasterized at this setting.

tratient actually.	
Refresh Highlight All Affected Objects ~	
Transparency Flattener Preset Options	
Preset Custom	PROFILE
Reset Save Delete	Circletting - The
Raster/Vector Balance:	TANK THE .
•	
Rasters Vectors	
Line Art and Text resolution: 1200 v ppi	
Gradient and Mesh resolution: 300 - ppi	
Convert All Text to Outlines	
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines	
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines Clip Complex Regions	
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines Clip Complex Regions Preserve Overprint	
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines City Complex Regions Preserve Overprint OK Cancel	ALICE RITTER
Convert All Strokes to Dutlines Cip Complex Regions Cip Complex Regions OK Cancel Page-Level Transparency Blending Color Space	ALICE RITTER
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines Cip Complex Regions Preserve Overprint OK Cancel Page-Level Transparency Blending Color Space Color Space: DeviceCMYK Change	Apply to PDF O All pages in document
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Convert All Strokes to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Convert All Strokes to Outlines Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Text to Outlines Compression Settings For Flattener-Generated Images:	Apply to PDF O All pages in document @ Current page
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines Clip Complex Regions Clip Complex Regions Clip Complex Regions Color Space: Color Space: Color Space: DeviceCMYK Change Compression Settings For Flattener-Generated Images: Monochrome: CCITT Group 4	Appiy to PDF O All pages in document © Current page O Pages range: From: 1 To: 4
Convert All Text to Outlines Convert All Strokes to Outlines Clip Complex Regions Preserve Overprint OK Cancel Page-Level Transparency Blending Color Space Color Space: DeviceCMYK Change. Compression Settings For Flattener-Generated Images: Monochrome: CCITT Group 4	ALICE RUTTER Apply to PDF All pages in document @ Current page Pages range from: 1 To: 4 Apply

Tip: You can find more information about printing transparency on the Adobe website at www.adobe.com. **4** Make other selections to see how the settings affect the document. When you are finished, click the close button in the upper right (Windows) or upper left (macOS) corner of the window to close the Flattener Preview window without applying your settings.

If you want to use the selected transparency flattener settings when printing, click Apply in the Flattener Preview dialog box.

About flattening options in the Flattener Preview dialog box

- Line Art And Text Resolution determines the resolution at which line art and text are rasterized. Because line art and text involve a sharper contrast around the edges, they need to be rasterized at a higher resolution to maintain a high-quality appearance. A resolution of 300 ppi is sufficient when proofing, but this should be increased to a higher resolution for final high-quality output. A resolution of 1200 ppi is typically sufficient for high-quality output.
- Gradient And Mesh Resolution determines the resolution at which gradients and meshes, which are sometimes called *blends*, will be rasterized. The resolution should be set appropriately for your specific printer. For proofing to a general-purpose laser printer or inkjet printer, the default setting of 150 ppi is appropriate. For printing to most high-quality output devices, such as a film or plate output device, a resolution of 300 ppi is usually sufficient.
- Convert All Text To Outlines ensures that the weight of all text in the artwork stays consistent. However, converting small fonts to outlines can make them appear noticeably thicker and less readable (especially when printing on lower-end printing systems).
- Convert All Strokes To Outlines ensures that the weight of all strokes in the artwork stays consistent. Selecting this option, however, causes thin strokes to appear slightly thicker (especially when printing on lower-end printing systems).
- Clip Complex Regions ensures that the boundaries between vector artwork and rasterized artwork fall along object paths. This option reduces stitching artifacts that result when part of an object is rasterized while another part remains in vector form (as determined by the Raster/Vector slider). Selecting this option may result in extremely complex clipping paths, which take significant time to compute, and can cause errors when printing.
- **Preserve Overprint** blends the color of transparent artwork with the background color to create an overprint effect. Overprinted colors are two or more inks printed on top of each other. For example, when a cyan ink prints over a yellow ink, the resulting overprint is a green color. Without overprinting, the underlying yellow would not be printed, resulting in a cyan color.

Setting up color management

Using color management can help you achieve consistent color throughout your workflow. Color profiles describe the characteristics of each device. Color management uses those profiles to map the colors possible for one device, such as a computer monitor, with the colors possible on another device, such as a printer.

- 1 Choose Edit > Preferences (Windows) or Acrobat > Preferences (macOS), and select Color Management from the list on the left.
- 2 From the Settings menu, choose North America Prepress 2. With this setting, Acrobat displays colors as they generally appear when printed using North American printing standards.

DRIVER AND		
Categories:	Color Setup	
Commenting A Documents Full Screen General Page Display	For more information on color settings, search for "setting up color management" in Help. Settings: North America Prepres 2	
3D & Multimedia	Working Spaces	
Accessibility Action Wizard Adobs Online Semicar	RG8: Adobe RG8 (1998)	
Catalog Color Management	CMYYC U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2	
Content Editing Convert From PDF	Grayscale Dot Gain 20% 🔍	
Forms Accounts Forms Identity Internet ArvaScript	Convention Options Engine: Adobe (ACE)	
Measuring (20) Measuring (30)	Description	
Measuring (Geo) Multimedia (legacy) Multimedia Trust (legacy) Reading Reviewing Search Security (chanced)	Preparation of content for common printing conditions in North America. CMYK values are preserved. Profile warnings are enabled.	
Signatures		
	OK Cancel	

The setting you select determines which color working spaces are used by the application and how the color management system converts colors. To view a description of a setting, select the setting, and then position the pointer over the setting name. The description appears at the bottom of the dialog box.

ACE (Adobe Color Engine) is the same color management engine used by other Adobe graphics software, so you can be confident that color management settings applied in Acrobat will mirror those applied in your other Adobe applications.

3 Click OK to close the Preferences dialog box.

• Note: You can synchronize color management settings for all the Adobe Creative Cloud applications in Adobe Bridge, which is available as part of a Creative Cloud membership. See Bridge Help for more information.

Previewing your print job (Acrobat Pro)

You've already previewed how transparency will print. Now you'll preview color separations and verify the resolution of individual objects. You'll also perform a *soft proof*—that is, you'll proof the document on the screen without having to print it.

Previewing color separations

To reproduce color and continuous-tone images, printers usually separate artwork into four plates, called *process colors*—one plate for each of the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black portions of the image. You can also include custom pre-mixed inks, called *spot colors*, which require their own plates. When inked with the appropriate color and printed in register with one another, these plates combine to reproduce the original artwork. The plates are called *color separations*.

You will preview color separations from this document using the Output Preview dialog box.

- 1 Make sure you're viewing page 1 of the document, and that the Print Production tool is open.
- 2 Click Output Preview in the right-hand pane.
- **3** Choose Separations from the Preview menu.

	Output Preview			
	Simulate			
	Simulation Profil	e: U.S. Web Coated (S	WOP) v2	~
	Simulate Ove	rprinting Page has	Overprint: No	
	Simulate Pan	er Color Set Pac	e Background Color	
				1 mil
	Simulate Blac	k Ink Ink Manag	er	
	Show			
	Show: All		Warning Opacity:	100 %
Output Preview				
	Show art, trim	h, & bleed boxes	Set Page Boxes	
Preflight	6			
Preflight	70			_
Edit Object	Preview. Separati	ons		
Preflight	Preview: Separations	ons)		_
 Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors 	Preview. Separations	ons		-
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors	Preview: Separations Separations Name Proce	e ss Plates		
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview	Preview. Coparati Separations Name Proce	e ss Plates ss Cyan	67%	
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview	Preview: Separations Separations Name Proce Proce	e ss Plates ss Cyan ss Magenta	67% 58%	
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview Save as PDF/X	Preview. Separations Separations Proce Proce Proce Proce	s ss Plates ss Cyan ss Magenta ss Yallow	67% 58% 31%	
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview Save as PDF/X	Preview Separations Separations Proce Proce Proce Proce Proce	ss Plates ss Vates ss Kagenta ss Yellow ss Black	67% 58% 31% 9%	
Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview Save as PDF/X Set Page Rever	Preview Separations Preview Proce Pr	ss Plates ss Plates ss Cyan ss Magenta ss Yellow ss Black Plates	67% 58% 31% 9%	
 Preflight Edit Object Convert Colors Flattener Preview Save as PDF/X Set Page Boxes 	Preview: Separations Proce Pro	ss Plates ss Cyan ss Yagenta ss Yellow ss Black Plates 0249	67% 58% 31% 9%	

The Separations area of the dialog box lists all the inks that are included in this document for printing. There are four process inks (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) and two spot colors (TOYO 0349 and TOYO 0343).

4 Drag the Output Preview dialog box to the side so that you can see the document. Then, in the Output Preview dialog box, deselect every ink except TOYO 0349. The items that remain on the page use the selected ink.

Output Pre	eview				×	
Simulat	e					
Simula	ation Profile: U.S. W	eb Coated (SW	OP) v2	~		
Sim	nulate Overprinting	Page has O	verprint: No			
Sim	nulate Paper Color	Set Page	Background Color			
Sim	nulate Black Ink	Ink Manager				
Show						
Show:	All	~	Warning Opacity:	100 %		
Sho	ow art, trim, & bleed	boxes S	et Page Boxes			
Preview:	Separations			~		
Separat	tions					
	Name					
	Process Plates					
	Process Cyan		0%			
	Process Magenta	a	0%			
	Process Yellow		0%			
	Process Black		0%			
	Spot Plates					
	TOYO 0349		0%			
	TOYO 0343		0%			
	Total Area Cover	ane	0%			

5 Deselect TOYO 0349, and select Process Magenta. Only those items that would print on the magenta plate appear.

Dutput Pre	view		×
Simulate	e		
Simula	tion Profile: U.S. W	Veb Coated (SWOP) v2	~
Sim	ulate Overprinting	Page has Overprint: No	
Sim	ulate Paper Color	Set Page Background Co	Nor 🔲
	iulate rapel Color	Set Page Background C	
Sim	nulate Black Ink	Ink Manager	
Show			
Channe	AB	Winning One	aba 100 m
Show:	60	warning Opa	City: 100 %
Sho	w art, trim, & bleed	boxes Set Page Boxes	A CHEADER THE AND A SHORE THE
		Transfer and the second	
Preview:	Separations		·
Senarat	ions		
Separat	IUIS		
and a	Name		S lot 1
	Process Plates		
	Process Cyan	0%	
	Process Magent	ta 24%	
	Process Yellow	0%	
	Process Black	0%	
	Spot Plates		ALICE DISCHER
	TOYO 0349	0%	
	TOYO 0343	0%	
	Terri Aces Cours	240/	

6 Select all the inks again.

► Tip: If you wanted to remap a spot color to a process color in order to limit the number of plates, and thus the expense, of a print job, you could use the lnk Manager, also available in the Output Preview dialog box.

Soft-proofing your document

You can use the Output Preview dialog box to soft-proof a document, so that you can see onscreen how your document will look when printed. Use the simulation settings to approximate the color.

As you change the profile chosen in the Simulation Profile menu, color shifts on the monitor. When you soft-proof a document, select the simulation profile that matches your output device. If you use accurately calibrated ICC profiles and have calibrated your monitor, the onscreen preview should match the final output. If you haven't calibrated your monitor or your profiles, the preview may not provide an exact match. For information about calibrating your monitor and profiles, see Adobe Acrobat DC Help.

Inspecting objects in a PDF file

You can take a closer look at individual graphics and text in a PDF file using the Object Inspector. The Object Inspector displays the image resolution, color mode, transparency, and other information about the selected object.

You'll check the resolution of the image on page 2.

- 1 Choose Object Inspector from the Preview menu in the Output Preview dialog box.
- **2** Scroll to page 2, and click the image of the woman.

	Output Preview ×
Self reinvention is something we all entertain, and the way fashion allows us to dream.	Simulate Simulation Profile: U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 Simulate Overprinting Page has Overprint: Yes Simulate Paper Color Set Page Background Color Simulate Black Ink Ink Manager
A for Bitre 1a localing of the form of the start of the s	Show Show: All Warning Opacity: 100 % Show art, trim, & bleed boxes Set Page Boxes Preview: Object Inspector
the many submets an Alac Dirac pipe, for a dirac darp pipe dirac dirac pipe dirac d	 ⇒ Filled Path: Image ColorSpace: DeviceCMYK ⇒ Image Attributes size: 1213 x 976 pixels (4,418 x 3,555 in) bits/pixel: 32 resolution: horizontal 274,543 pixels/in vertical 274,543 pixels/ filters: JPEG Overprint=False OPM=1 ri=Relative Colorimetric

• Note: If you're working with a PDF/X or PDF/A file, the color profile that is embedded in the file as its output intent is automatically selected. **Tip:** You can document the information the Object Inspector reports for easy access later. Shift-click an area to create a comment with that information.

► Tip: Overprinting is automatically displayed accurately in PDF/X files in all versions of Acrobat DC and Acrobat Reader DC. You can change the settings to display overprinting accurately for all files in the Page Display pane of the Acrobat Preferences dialog box. The Object Inspector lists attributes of the image you clicked, including the image resolution: 274.543 by 274.543 pixels.

- **3** Click the body text on the page. The Object Inspector displays information about the text, including the font and type size.
- 4 Close the Output Preview dialog box, and then close the Print Production tool.

Advanced printing controls

You'll use the advanced printing features of Acrobat DC Pro to produce color separations, add printing marks, and control how transparent and complex items are imaged.

- 1 Choose File > Print.
- **2** In the Print dialog box, choose a PostScript printer. In Windows, if you do not have a PostScript printer available, you can choose Adobe PDF.

Some advanced printing options, including color separations, are available only for PostScript printers. The Adobe PDF printer uses a PostScript printer driver, so it provides access to the options covered in this exercise.

- **3** In the Pages To Print area, select All.
- 4 In the Page Sizing & Handling area, select the Size tab, and then select Fit.

The Fit option reduces or enlarges each page to fit the paper size.

5 Click Advanced near the top of the Print dialog box.

There are four options on the left side of the dialog box: Output, Marks And Bleeds, PostScript Options, and Color Management.

- 6 Select Output, and then choose Separations from the Color menu.
- 7 Click the Ink Manager button in the Ink Manager area.
- 8 In the Ink Manager dialog box, select the icon to the left of TOYO 0349. The icon changes into a CMYK color swatch, indicating that this color will be printed as a process color, using the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black plates.

Name	Туре	Density	Sequence
Process Cyan	Normal	0.610	1
Process Magenta	Normal	0.760	2
Process Yellow	Normal	0.160	3
Process Black	Normal	1.700	4
TOYO 0349	Normal	0.576	S
TOYO 0343	Normal	0.326	6
r			
r Name		Deputito	Comuners
r Name	Туре	Density	Sequence
r Name Process Cyan	Type Normal	Density 0.610	Sequence
Vame Process Cyan Process Magenta	Type Normal Normal	Density 0.610 0.760	Sequence 1 2
Vame Yrocess Cyan Yrocess Magenta Yrocess Yellow	Type Normal Normal Normal	Density 0.610 0.760 0.160	Sequence 1 2 3

Acrobat will mix cyan and black to simulate the dedicated ink that is used to produce the TOYO 0349 spot color. In many cases, it is more cost-effective to use a mixture of CMYK inks than to add an entirely new spot color ink.

To globally convert all spot colors to their CMYK equivalents, select Convert All Spots To Process.

- 9 Click OK to close the Ink Manager dialog box.
- 10 In the Advanced Print Setup dialog box, select Marks And Bleeds from the list on the left. Select All Marks to enable trim marks, bleed marks, registration marks, color bars, and page information to print on each plate, outside the edges of the document.

ttings: Custom	Delete Save As	
inter; Adobe PDF	Print to File Print As Image 300 dpi	
	Marks	
	All Marks Style: Default	
	Trim Marks Line Weight: 0.25 v pt	
	↓ Bleed Marks	
utput		
larks and Bleeds	Registration Marks	
ostScript Options		
olor Management	Color Bars	
	Page Information	

- **11** Select Color Management from the list on the left.
- **12** Choose Acrobat Color Management from the Color Handling menu.

13 Choose Working CMYK: U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 from the Color Profile menu.

Advanced Print S	Setup						×
Settings: Q	ustom	•	Delete	Save As	300 ~	dni	
10000		Color Management				. ala	
		Color Handling:	Acrobat Color Mana	gement	2		
		Color Profile:	Working CMYK: U.S.	Web Coated (SWOP) v2	E	~	
Output		Output Color:	Separations				
Marks and Ble	eeds	Treat grays as a	C-only grays				
Color Manage	ement	Preserve Black					
		Preserve CMYK	Primaries				
+		Apply output p	review settings				
62	PROFILE	Uses specification total area of ink o	s designed to produc overage, negative pla	e quality separations us ite, coated publication-	sing U.S. inks under th grade stock.	e following printing	conditions: 300%

The color profile you select should match the device you will be printing to.

14 Click Save As at the top of the Advanced Print Setup dialog box, and save your settings using the name **Profile**. Then click OK.

Saved settings are added to the settings menu, so you can reuse them for future print jobs without having to re-enter the settings for recurring publications or specific output devices.

- **15** Click OK to exit the Advanced Print Setup dialog box. Then either click Print to print this document, or click Cancel if you prefer not to print at this time.
- **16** Close the document, and quit Acrobat.

• Note: If you've chosen a printer that does not support CMYK printing, the Working CMYK profile will not be available in the Color Profile menu. In that case, choose the Working RGB profile instead.

Review questions

- 1 What is a PDF preset?
- **2** How can you select a settings file when you create a PDF using the Print command in macOS?
- 3 What problems can Preflight detect within a PDF?
- **4** What is a spot color, and how can you remap it to a process color when you print color separations?

Review answers

- 1 A PDF preset is a group of settings that affects the process of creating a PDF file. These settings are designed to balance file size with quality, depending on how the PDF file will be used.
- **2** To change the settings file in macOS, first choose Save As Adobe PDF from the PDF menu in the Print dialog box. Then choose a preset from the Adobe PDF Settings menu.
- **3** Use the Preflight command to check for all areas of concern within a PDF. For example, if you are sending a PDF file to a professional printer, preflight the document to verify that fonts are embedded, graphics have the appropriate resolution, and colors are correct.
- 4 A spot color is a special premixed ink that is used instead of, or in addition to, CMYK process inks, and that requires its own printing plate on a printing press. If absolute color accuracy is not critical, and it is not practical to print a spot color plate as well as CMYK plates, you can remap the spot color to a process color for printing using the Ink Manager. In the Advanced Print Setup dialog box, select Separations, and then click Ink Manager. In the Ink Manager, click the icon to the left of the spot color to remap it to a process color for the print job.

This page intentionally left blank

INDEX

Α

accessibility 82-95 checking 84 features 92 Accessibility Checker panel 83-85 editing 284 Accessibility Setup Assistant 93 Accessibility tool 84 accessible text, copying text as 132 ACE (Adobe Color Engine) 300 saving 280 Acrobat DC. See Adobe Acrobat DC Acrobat PDFMaker about 51, 160 dialog box 161, 169 Acrobat Reader. See Adobe Acrobat Reader dialog box 272 Acrobat Reader app. Add Image tool 130 See Adobe Acrobat Reader app changing view 147 adding commenting in 147–149 editing PDF files in 149 opening files in 146 using 145-149 Acrobat ribbon in Microsoft Office 160 action pane 271

actions about 270 adding steps to 276 adding to form fields 255 creating 274-283 exporting 284 Go To steps in 277 instruction steps in 276 naming 280 reviewing tasks performed by 274 sharing 284 using 270-274, 280 Action Wizard tool 270 Actual Size command 69 Add Header And Footer barcodes 246 blank pages 50 bookmarks 113 bullet points 126-127 comments 223-229 files to combined files 181 form fields in Acrobat 245, 247-253

adding (continued) headers and footers to PDF files 272, 281 images to PDF files 130 keywords 118 multimedia files 117 navigational tools to the toolbar 73 page numbers 108 passwords 200-203 security 200-219 steps to actions 276 sticky notes 225 tags 91-92 text 126 text fields 247 tools to the Quick Tools toolbar 32 tools to the Tools pane 20 videos to PDF files 282 watermarks 272 Add Text Box tool 224 Add Text tool 82, 127, 209, 224 Add Watermark dialog box 272 Adobe Acrobat DC about 10-12 installing 2 mobile app 6 options for purchasing 3 starting 3 Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book. Third Edition about 1 prerequisites 2

Adobe Acrobat DC Help 36 Adobe Acrobat DC Pro compared with Acrobat Standard 2 lessons requiring 2 Adobe Acrobat DC Standard 2 Adobe Acrobat Reader about 11 commenting in 225 distributing 13 installing 13 security in 11 using Protected Mode in 196 Adobe Acrobat Reader app. See Acrobat Reader app about 144 Adobe Color Engine (ACE) 300 Adobe Document Cloud about 12, 144 editing PDF files in 150 signing in to 146 tools available in 150 uploading files to 145 Adobe Fill & Sign app about 12, 144 creating a profile in 153 using 152-156 Adobe LiveCycle Rights Management 198 Adobe PDF files

about 10 accessible 82–91 adding security to 198–219

advantages of 10 combining 180-193 comparing methods for creating 40 consolidating and converting source files 45, 180-193 converting to Microsoft Word documents 137 creating 38-65 creating by dragging and dropping 44 designing for online viewing 31 from Microsoft Excel files 168-173 from Microsoft Word documents in Windows 161-166 from Microsoft Word documents on macOS 167-168 from web pages 60-64 navigating 22-26, 68-76 on the web 13 opening 15 optimizing 55-56 reading 68-74 reflowing 87 searching 74-76 structured 83 tagged 83, 84 Adobe PDF Print Engine 294 Adobe PDF Printer 51–52 Adobe Scan app about 12, 144

using 155-156

Adobe Sign preparing a form for 206-209 sending for signatures 210-211 signing a document in 212-216 using 205-215 Adobe Sign app 12, 144 alignment, changing 126 Allow Fast Web View option 32 Allow Speculative Downloading In The Background option 32 alt text about 91 specifying 91-92 Always Add Bookmarks To Adobe PDF Files option in the Combine Files dialog box 189 analyzing form data 262 PDF files for printing 291 Append To Document, web pages 62 apps for Acrobat 12 Arrow tool 225 Attach File tool 224 attaching the original Word file to a PDF 164 audio, adding to PDF files 117 automatic scrolling 94

automating tasks using actions 270

Autotag Document option 91

В

barcodes, adding 246 Bates numbering 109 best practices for creating print-ready PDF files 289 blank pages, inserting 50 bolding text 126 booklets, printing 80 bookmarks adding 25-26, 113-114 changing destinations for 115 creating 26, 114 for converted web pages 61 from Word headings and styles 161 generating automatically 25 in combined files 190 increasing text size in 95 moving 116 naming automatically 114 navigating with 25 nesting 26, 116

Bookmarks button in navigation pane 25, 100 Bookmarks panel 100, 113 Bookmarks tab, PDFMaker 162 bounding boxes, moving 127 Box, saving PDF files to 44 Bridge. *See* Adobe Bridge brightness setting 35 bullet points 124, 126–127

buttons, adding to forms 246, 255

С

calculating values in form fields 264–265

cascading multiple documents 27-28

changing text in a PDF 123–127

check boxes, adding to forms 246

checking accessibility 84

check marks in the Comments list 232

checks in preflighting 291

clipboard, creating Adobe PDF from contents 56

Clip Complex Regions, when flattening transparency 299

Cloud tool 225

collecting form data 260-261

color management about 300 setting up 300 synchronizing settings across Adobe Creative Cloud 300 when printing 306 color of text, changing 126 color separations about 301 previewing 301 printing 304 Combine Files tool arranging pages in 186-188 browsing thumbnails in 183 displaying contents as list in 188 excluding pages in 47 opening 45, 181 page size options in 189 setting options in 189-190 specifying options for conversion in 48 zooming in on thumbnails in 183 combining files 178–193 about 180 adding files when 181 in PDF Portfolios 180, 191–192 limitations of 180 selecting files when 180-185 setting options for 189-190

commenting tools 224-225 comments about 224 adding in Acrobat Reader 225 adding to a PDF 223-229 changing the status of 233 exporting 231 filtering 232 importing 230-231 in Acrobat Reader app 147-149, 225 including in a PDF from a Word document 163-164 inserting text with 228 marking text edits in 228-230 replying to 233 sorting 231 summarizing 234 viewing 230, 231 Comments List 232 Comment tool 19, 223 Compare Files tool 238-240 compatibility in encryption 201 completing forms 81-83 compression 55 Connected Lines tool 225 conversion settings in PDFMaker 164 Convert All Strokes To Outlines option 299

Convert All Text To Outlines option 299

Convert Displayed Comments To Notes In Adobe PDF option 163

converting and combining files 45 a page range 47 spot colors to process colors 304 web pages 60

converting comments to PDF notes 163

Convert Multimedia and Preserve Slide Transitions option 175

Convert To PDF preferences 42

copying text and images 132–134

Copy With Formatting command 133

Create Link dialog box 112

Create New Action dialog box 275

Create PDF tool 19, 40

creating

actions 274 bookmarks 26, 114 custom preflight profiles 294 custom stamps 224 forms 244 links in PDF files 111 creating Adobe PDFs about 40 by dragging and dropping 44 by scanning 57-59 comparing methods for 40 for print and prepress 288 from Office applications 160-177 from the clipboard 56 from web pages 60-64 using the Adobe **PDF** Printer (Windows) 51-52 using the Create PDF tool 40 using the Print command 51-52 using the Save As Adobe PDF option (macOS) 53 cropping images 130 customizing interface brightness 35 preflight profiles 294

D

date fields, creating 249 default tools 18 work area 15

in the Combine Files dialog box 189 deleting blocks of text 122-123 pages 106 pages when combining files into a single PDF 47, 185-186 description, adding 118 digital IDs about 205 creating 217-218 using 217-218 digital signatures about 205 adding to forms 246 creating 217-218 creating fields for 207 sending documents for 205-215

Default File Size option

displaying page size 16

Display In Read Mode By Default option 32

display, onscreen 68

distributing Acrobat Reader 13 PDF forms 257, 261

dividing a spreadsheet into sections for viewing 173

Document Cloud. See Adobe Document Cloud document message bar 259 Document Open password 200 document properties, setting 117, 197, 199 document review processes 222 document title 117 document window 16 downsampling 56 dragging and dropping to create PDFs 44 Dropbox, saving files to 44 dropdown menus, adding to forms 246 duplex printing 80 Dynamic Zoom tool 73

Ε

editing actions 284 images in Acrobat 129–132 images in another application 131 PDF files in Acrobat Reader app 149 text 122–127 Edit PDF tool 19, 21, 122, 129 email-based reviews about 222 importing comments

from 230
email, distributing forms through 261

Enable Accessibility And Reflow With Tagged PDF option 169

encrypting PDF files 198, 200

Enhance Scans tool 19

Enter key, navigating with 69

Eraser tool 224

Excel spreadsheets

converting to PDF in Windows 168–172 converting to PDF on Mac OS 172

saving PDF tables as 139

exiting Full Screen mode 29

expanding documents in the Combine Files dialog box 184–185

exporting

actions 284 comments 231 form data 263 images 132–133 PDF files as Word documents 137 preflight profiles 294 presentations to PowerPoint 135–136 tables from PDF as Excel spreadsheets 139

Export PDF tool 19, 137

F

Fields panel 245

file information, viewing in the Combine Files dialog box 183

file size, reducing

by changing compatibility setting 54–55 by optimizing 55

filling out PDF forms 81

Fill & Sign app. See Adobe Fill & Sign app

Fill & Sign tool 19, 209

filtering comments 232 form data 262

find, compared to search 74

finding and replacing text 125

Find panel 125

First Page button 74

First Page command 70

Fit One Full Page button 43

Fit To Paper Width option 170

Fit Visible command 69

Fit Width command 23, 68, 71

Fit Worksheet To A Single Page option in Excel 170

fixing PDF files for printing 291

flat forms, converting into interactive forms 81, 244 Flattener Preview 296

flattening transparency 295–300

floating toolbar 31

font, changing 126

formatting text field responses 249

formatting text in Acrobat 126, 127

form data

analyzing 262–263 exporting 263 filtering and sorting 262–263 using in a spreadsheet or database 263 viewing responses in a PDF Portfolio 260–262

Form Editing mode 245

form fields

adding actions to 255 adding automatically 245 adding labels to 255 barcodes 246 buttons 246, 255 calculating numeric fields 264–265 check boxes 246 date fields 249 digital signatures 246 dropdown menus 246 editing properties for 249 list boxes 246 naming 247

phone number fields 249 positioning 248 previewing 250 radio buttons 246, 251 restricting answer formats for 249 reviewing in Fields panel 245 scrolling text fields 250 text fields 246-247 types 246 validating numeric fields 264 zip code fields 249 form responses tracking 260 using in a spreadsheet or database 263 viewing in a PDF Portfolio 262 forms adding a reset button to 255 adding text fields to 247 collecting data from 260 compiling responses from 261 creating from scanned documents 244 creating from Word documents 244 distributing 257, 261 document message bar in 259 filling out 81

flat 81

laying out precisely 248

making interactive 244

tracking 260 working with 242–267 Full Screen mode about 29 avoiding the warning message 282 displaying navigation tools in 30 exiting 29 setting a file to open in 30 setting preferences for 30 viewing PDFs in 29–31, 118

G

Go To Page dialog box 23 Go To steps in actions 277 Gradient And Mesh Resolution option 299

Η

Hand tool 18, 25, 68

headers and footers adding to PDF files 272, 28

> editing in PDF file created from Office document 165

headers, viewing in a spreadsheet while scrolling 173 headings and styles in Word, converting to bookmarks 161

hiding layers when printing 293 text (redacting) 128

highlighting areas affected by transparency 296–297

Highlight Text tool in Acrobat 224, 227 in Acrobat Reader app 148

Home view in Acrobat 14 in Acrobat Reader app 146 in Document Cloud 150

I

image-editing application, using to edit images in a PDF 131

image fields, adding to forms 246, 254

images adding 130 converting to PDF 40 copying 132–134 cropping 130 editing in Acrobat 129–132 editing in another application 131 exporting from Acrobat 132–133

ling to PDF copying files 272, 281

images (continued) replacing 129 saving 134

importing actions 284 comments 230 preflight profiles 294

initial view, setting to Full Screen mode 30

Initial View tab in the Document Properties dialog box 117

Ink Manager 302, 304

inserting blank pages 50 images 130 pages from one PDF file into another 104

Insert Pages dialog box 50, 104

Insert Text tool 224, 228

inspecting objects in a PDF file 303

installers, Acrobat Reader 13

installing Acrobat 2

instruction steps, adding to actions 276

interactive forms, creating 244

Internet settings, for converting web pages 60

inviting reviewers 234

Κ

keyboard shortcuts 94 keywords, adding to a PDF 118

L

labels, adding to form fields 255

Larger File Size option in the Combine Files dialog box 189

layers, printing 293

layout of forms 248

learning resources 5

Line Art And Text Resolution option 299

links

about 73 adding actions to 110 changing the destination of 110 creating 111 editing 110

list boxes, adding to forms 246

LiveCycle Rights Management 198

Μ

magnification about 68 changing 18, 22

magnifying glass in the Combine Files tool 183

mail merge, converting Word files to PDF 166

Make Accessible action 89-91

Make Searchable option 58

Manage Actions dialog box 284

markup tools 224-225

Marquee Zoom tool 72

Media Encoder. See Adobe Media Encoder

menu bar, reopening 16

merging files into a single PDF 178-193

metadata, adding to PDF files 117

Microsoft Excel converting spreadsheets to PDF on Mac OS 172

> exporting tables to 139 using PDFMaker with, in Windows 168–171

Microsoft Office files including in combined files 180 using Acrobat with 158–177 Microsoft PowerPoint

exporting presentations to 135 using PDFMaker with 174–176

Microsoft SharePoint, using to distribute forms 261

Microsoft Word documents converting to PDF on Mac OS 167 converting with PDFMaker in Windows 161–166 saving PDF files as 137

Microsoft WordPad, creating PDF files from 52

mobile apps for Acrobat about 12, 6–7 downloading 144 using 142–157

monitor resolution 68

movie files, adding to a PDF 117

moving pages 102 text bounding boxes 127

multiline text fields, adding 249

multimedia files, adding to PDF files 117

multiple documents combining into a single PDF 45 viewing 26

Ν

naming form fields 247 radio buttons 251

navigating in Full Screen mode 30 PDF documents 22, 68–76 with Enter and Return keys 69 with scroll bar 70

Navigation Bar in Full Screen mode 30

navigation pane Bookmarks panel 100 displaying 100 Page Thumbnails panel 23 Security Settings button in 198

Tags panel 89

navigation tools, adding to the toolbar 73

New Bookmark button 26, 113, 114

Next Page button 26

Next Page command 23

Next View button 74

notes from Microsoft Word comments 163

Number Pages command 107

numeric fields, calculating and validating 264–265

0

Object Inspector 303 OCR, applying 58–59 omitting pages from combined files 185-186 onscreen display 68 opacity. See transparency opening password-protected PDF files 203 PDFs in Acrobat 15 PDFs in Acrobat Reader app 146 PDFs in Full Screen mode 30 optimizing PDF files 55-56 Organize Pages tool 19, 20, 104 organizing pages in the Combine Files dialog box 186-188

Output Preview dialog box 303

Oval tool 225

Ρ

Page Controls toolbar 17 Page Display preferences 94 page numbers, adding to a PDF 108 page preview box 71

page range, converting 47

pages

arranging in the Combine Files dialog box 186–188 deleting 106 inserting 104 moving with page thumbnails 102 omitting from combined files 185–186 printing 76 renumbering 107–108 rotating 105

page size displaying 16 options in the Combine Files dialog box 189

Pages panel 19

Page Thumbnails button 24

Page Thumbnails panel 23–25

page view magnification 71

panning across a page 68

password-protected PDF files creating 200–201 opening 203

password strength 201

PDF/A 295

PDF/E 295

PDF files. See Adobe PDF files

PDFMaker 51

PDF Optimizer 55

PDF Portfolios advantages of 191 collecting form responses in 260 creating 191–192

PDF settings files (presets) about 54, 288 selecting 290

PDF standards 295

PDF tables, saving as Excel spreadsheets 139

PDF/X files creating for professional printing 289 saving as 295 validating 295

Pencil tool 224

Permission Details in the Security Settings panel 199

Permissions password 200

phone number field, creating 249

pop-up menus, adding to forms 246

positioning form fields 248

PostScript printer driver 304

PowerPoint presentations converting to PDF in Windows 174–175 converting to PDF on macOS 176 exporting from PDF 135 preferences Convert To PDF 42 for web browsing 32 Full Screen mode 30, 282 Internet 32 Page Display 94 Reading 95

preflighting PDF files 291-293

preflight profiles 294

preflight summary report 293

Prepare For Distribution action 270

Prepare Form tool 206–216, 244

prepress, creating PDF files for 288

prerequisites for Classroom in a Book 2

presentations

exporting to PowerPoint 135

setting up 118 viewing in Full Screen mode 29

Preserve Overprint option 299

presets for creating PDF files 54

previewing color separations 301 documents in the Combine Files dialog box 183 form fields 250 printing 301 transparency 294 Previous Page command 23

Previous View command 74, 101

Print command, using to create PDF files 51–52

printers' marks 305

printing booklets 80 color separations 304 comments 234 PDF files 76 printers' marks 305 using color management 306

printing options 304

print preview 301

Print Production tool 291

professional printing, creating PDFs for 289

profiles in Fill & Sign app 153

Prompt For Conversion Settings option, in Excel 170

Prompt User option when creating actions 276

proofing onscreen 303

properties

document 117 editing for form fields 249

Protected Mode in Acrobat Reader 11, 196

protecting PDF files 198-219

Protect tool 19, 200

Q

Quick Tools on toolbar 32

R

radio buttons adding 246, 251 naming 251

rasterization 297

Raster/Vector Balance slider 298

reading comments 230 PDFs 68 PDFs out loud 95

Reading preferences 95–96

Read mode 31-32

rearranging pages in a PDF 102

Recognition Report 90

Record Audio tool 224

Rectangle tool 225

redacting text 128

reducing file size 54-56

reflowing a PDF file 87–89 text 123

remapping spot colors to process colors 302, 304

Remove Selected Items button in the Combine Files dialog box 47, 185 Remove Split command 29 removing pages from combined files 185

renumbering pages 107-109

reopening the menu bar 16

Replace Text tool 224, 228

replacing images 129 multiple occurrences of text 125 text 123–124

replying to comments 233

Require A Password To Open The Document option 201

resampling images 56

reset buttons, adding to forms 255

resetting toolbars 74

resizing text boxes 127

resolution, checking 303

resources for learning Acrobat 5

response file, adding form data to 261

Results pane in the Preflight dialog box 292–293

Return key, navigating with 69

reviewers, inviting 234

Review mode in Document Cloud 152 reviews about 222 commenting and markup tools for 224 shared 222, 234–237 sharing PDFs from Document Cloud 151 types of 222 using Acrobat in 220–241 rich text format, copying text as 132

roman numerals as page numbers 107 rotating pages 105

S

sandboxing 11, 196 Save As Adobe PDF option 53 saving actions 280 as image files 134 as RTF 132 as Word documents 137 to cloud accounts 44 scanning documents creating interactive forms from 244 in Acrobat 57-59 making text editable 58 using Adobe Scan app 155 using OCR 58

scrolling, automatic 94 searching PDF documents 74–76 security in PDF files about 198 adding 194–219 and accessibility 87 settings 198

Security preferences 217

Security Settings button in the navigation pane 198

Selection tool 26

Set Bookmark Destination command 115

shared reviews about 222 initiating 234–237 using network folders for 237

SharePoint. See Microsoft SharePoint saving PDF files to 44 using in a review 222

sharing actions 284 PDF files 96

showing and hiding layers when printing 293

signatures adding in Fill & Sign app 154 adding to forms 246 electronic 205–219 signing PDF files 205-219 using Fill & Sign 209 Smaller File Size option in the Combine Files dialog box 189 smoothing text 94 Snapshot feature 133 soft-proofing a PDF file 303 sorting comments 231 form data 262 source files, attaching to PDFs 164 splitting a document's view 28 spot colors, remapping to process 302 Spreadsheet Split command 173 Stamp tool 224 Start button in actions 271 sticky notes adding 225 converting Word comments to 163-166 Sticky Note tool in Acrobat 224 in Acrobat Reader

app 148 Stop button in actions 271 Strikethrough tool 224, 229 structure in PDF files 83 styles in Word, converting to bookmarks 161–162

Submit Form button 259

summarizing comments 234

SWF animations, adding to PDF files 117

Т

tables, exporting as spreadsheets 139 tagged PDF files about 51,83 working with 84 Tags panel 89 Take A Snapshot command 133 task panes 20 text adding 126 bolding 126 changing properties of 123, 126 color of 126 copying 132-133 deleting 122-123 editing 122-127 finding and replacing 125 formatting 126 inserting in comments 224, 228 making editable 58

marking for deletion 229 marking up 228-230 redacting 128 reflowing 87-89, 123 replacing 123-124 repositioning on the page 127 searching 74-76 smoothing 94 text fields adding to forms 246, 247 formatting for multiple lines 249 thumbnails browsing in the Combine Files dialog box 183 highlighted area in 25 moving pages with 102 rearranging in the Combine Files dialog box 186-188 viewing 23

TIFF files, converting to PDF 40

tiling documents 27

title, document 117

toolbar

about 17 adding tools to 73 customizing 32 resetting to default 74

tools

Accessibility 84 Action Wizard 270 Add Text 209, 224

Cloud 225 Combine Files 181 Comment 19, 223 commenting and markup 224 Create PDF 19, 40-43 custom stamp 224 Edit PDF 19, 21, 122, 129 Enhance Scans 19 Export PDF 19 Fill & Sign 19, 209 Highlight Text 224, 227 Organize Pages 19, 20, 104 Oval 225 Prepare Form 205-216, 244 Print Production 291 Protect 19, 200 Redact 128 selecting in the Tools pane 20 showing and hiding 72 Stamp 224 Sticky Note 224 Tools Center 20 Tools pane adding tools to 20, 84 panels in 19

TouchUp Reading Order tool 89

Tracker 260

transitions, retaining in a PDF from a PowerPoint presentation 174 transparency about 294 flattener preset options 297 flattener preview settings 296 flattening 295 options for flattening 299 previewing 294 using efficiently for printing 289

type style, changing 126

U

Underline tool 224

Undo button in Acrobat Reader app 149

uploading files to Document Cloud 145

V

validating form field data 264 versions of documents,

comparing 238–240

video files, adding to PDF files 117

View Adobe PDF Result option 164–166

viewing

comments 230, 231 documents in Protected Mode in Reader 196

file information in the Combine Files dialog box 183

form responses 260

individual pages of a document in the Combine Files dialog box 184–185 multiple documents 26 multiple views of a document 28 PDFs in Full Screen mode 29–31 PDFs in Read mode 31–32 security settings 198 spreadsheet headers while scrolling through rows 173

View menu 23

views

Actual Size 69 changing 71 Fit Visible 69 Fit Width 69 split 28 Spreadsheet Split 173 Zoom To Page Level 69 View settings

in Acrobat Reader app 146

viruses, preventing 196

W

Ζ

watermarks, adding 272 web browsing preferences for PDF files 32 zooming web links, downloading and converting 62 web pages converting to PDF 60-64 including PDFs in 13 Word documents attaching source files to PDFs 164 converting mail-merge to PDF 166 converting to Adobe PDF in Windows 161-166 converting to Adobe PDF on Mac OS 167-168 including in combined files 180 saving PDF files as 137

zip code fields, creating 249 Zoom In button 17 zooming in on thumbnails in the Combine Files dialog box 183 with the Dynamic Zoom tool 73 with the Marquee Zoom tool 72 Zoom Out button 18 Zoom To command 23 zoom tools 18, 72

Production Notes

Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book, Third Edition was created electronically using Adobe InDesign CC (2019 release). Art was produced using Adobe InDesign, Adobe Illustrator, and Adobe Photoshop.

References to company names in the lessons are for demonstration purposes only and are not intended to refer to any actual organization or person.

Lesson files

Photographic images, illustrations, and other lesson files are intended for use only with the tutorials.

Typefaces used

Adobe Myriad Pro and Adobe Minion Pro are used throughout the lessons. For more information about OpenType and Adobe fonts, visit www.adobe.com/ type/opentype/.

Team credits

The following individuals contributed to the development of *Adobe Acrobat DC Classroom in a Book, Third Edition*:

Writer: Brie Gyncild

Project Manager: Lisa Fridsma

Lesson Development: Brie Gyncild

Illustrator and Compositor: Lisa Fridsma

Copyeditor and Proofreader: Wendy Katz

Technical Reviewer: Megan Ahearn

Indexer: Brie Gyncild

Cover design: Eddie Yuen

Interior design: Mimi Heft

Adobe Press Executive Editor: Laura Norman

Adobe Press Project Editor: Tracey Croom

This page intentionally left blank



The fastest, easiest, most comprehensive way to learn **Adobe Creative Cloud**

Classroom in a Book[®], the best-selling series of hands-on software training books, helps you learn the features of Adobe software quickly and easily.

The **Classroom in a Book** series offers what no other book or training program does—an official training series from Adobe Systems, developed with the support of Adobe product experts.

To see a complete list of our Classroom in a Book titles covering the 2019 release of Adobe Creative Cloud go to: www.adobepress.com/cc2019 Adobe Photoshop CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135261781

Adobe Illustrator CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135262160

Adobe InDesign CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135262153

Adobe Dreamweaver CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135262146

Adobe Premiere Pro CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135298893

Adobe Dimension CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780134863542

Adobe Audition CC Classroom in a Book, Second edition ISBN: 9780135228326

Adobe After Effects CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135298640

Adobe Animate CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135298886

Adobe Lightroom CC Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135298657

Adobe Photoshop Elements Classroom in a Book (2019 release) ISBN: 9780135298657

Adobe Press